

CDs and Cassettes  
available

COLLOQUIAL

# PORTUGUESE OF BRAZIL

The Complete Course for Beginners

Esmenia Simões Osborne, João Sampaio and Barbara McIntyre



## **The Colloquial Series**

**Series adviser: Gary King**

The following languages are available in the Colloquial series:

Afrikaans	Korean
Albanian	Latvian
Amharic	Lithuanian
Arabic (Levantine)	Malay
Arabic of Egypt	Mongolian
Arabic of the Gulf and Saudi Arabia	Norwegian
Basque	Punjabi
Bulgarian	Persian
* Cambodian	Polish
* Cantonese	* Portuguese
* Chinese	* Portuguese of Brazil
Croatian and Serbian	Romanian
Czech	* Russian
Danish	Scottish Gaelic
Dutch	Slovak
Estonian	Slovene
Finnish	Somali
French	* Spanish
German	Spanish of Latin America
Gujarati	Swedish
Greek	* Tamil
Hindi	* Thai
Hungarian	Turkish
Icelandic	Urdu
Indonesian	Ukrainian
Italian	Vietnamese
Japanese	Welsh

Accompanying cassette(s) (\* and CDs) are available for all the above titles. They can be ordered through your bookseller or send payment with order to Taylor & Francis/Routledge Ltd, ITPS, Cheriton House, North Way, Andover, Hants SP10 5BE, UK, or to Routledge Inc., 29 West 35th Street, New York, NY 10001, USA.

**COLLOQUIAL CD-ROMs**

Multimedia Language Courses

Available in: Chinese, French, Portuguese and Spanish

# **Colloquial Portuguese of Brazil**

## **The Complete Course for Beginners**

**Esmenia Simões Osborne, João Sampaio  
and Barbara McIntyre**



**London and New York**

# Contents

First published 1997  
by Routledge  
11 New Fetter Lane, London EC4P 4EE

Simultaneously published in the USA and Canada  
by Routledge  
29 West 35th Street, New York, NY 10001

Reprinted with corrections 1999  
Reprinted 2000, 2002

Second edition first published 2002

*Routledge is an imprint of the Taylor & Francis Group*

© 1997, 2002 Esmenia Simões Osborne, João Sampaio, Barbara McIntyre  
The publisher has made every effort to trace copyright holders and would  
be glad to hear from any who have not been traced.

Typeset in Times by Florence Production Ltd, Stoodleigh, Devon  
Illustrations by Matthew Crabbe  
Printed and bound in England by  
Biddles Limited, Guildford and King's Lynn

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reprinted or reproduced  
or utilized in any form or by any electronic, mechanical, or other means,  
now known or hereafter invented, including photocopying and recording,  
or in any information storage or retrieval system, without permission in  
writing from the publishers.

*British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data*  
A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

*Library of Congress Cataloguing in Publication Data*  
A catalog record for this book has been requested

ISBN 0-415-27679-9 (book)  
ISBN 0-415-27680-2 (cassettes)  
ISBN 0-415-28090-7 (CD)  
ISBN 0-415-27681-0 (pack)

<b>Introduction</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>A guide to pronunciation</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>1 Oi, tudo bem?</b>	<b>7</b>
Hi, is everything OK?	
<b>2 Gosto de viajar</b>	<b>27</b>
I like to travel	
<b>3 Parabéns!</b>	<b>46</b>
Congratulations!	
<b>4 Desculpe!</b>	<b>64</b>
Excuse me!	
<b>5 Posso ver . . . ?</b>	<b>81</b>
Can I see . . . ?	
<b>6 Uma passagem de ida para Ouro Prêto</b>	<b>99</b>
A single to Ouro Prêto	
<b>7 Não me sinto bem</b>	<b>115</b>
I don't feel well	
<b>8 Não deslique . . .</b>	<b>134</b>
Hold on . . .	
<b>9 O fim de semana</b>	<b>150</b>
The weekend	
<b>10 Moro num apartamento</b>	<b>170</b>
I live in a flat	
<b>11 Encontramo-nos mais tarde?</b>	<b>186</b>
Shall we meet later?	
<b>12 Exmo. Senhor . . .</b>	<b>202</b>
Dear Sir . . .	

<b>13 A Internet . . .</b>	
The Internet . . .	<b>218</b>
<b>Reference grammar</b>	<b>230</b>
<b>Key to exercises</b>	<b>247</b>
<b>Portuguese–English glossary</b>	<b>287</b>
<b>English–Portuguese glossary</b>	<b>302</b>
<b>Topic index</b>	<b>312</b>
<b>Grammatical index</b>	<b>314</b>

# Introduction

This book has been written to provide a beginners' course in Brazilian Portuguese suitable for self-study, using a practical and modern method. It consists of thirteen lessons containing dialogues, reading comprehensions and exercises covering essential grammar points and vocabulary. Any differences of grammar and vocabulary found in European Portuguese are highlighted and the language used is kept simple but idiomatic. A simplified pronunciation guide is included and recordings accompany the book, which allow you to listen to, and practise speaking, the Portuguese language.

The purpose of the course is to provide the student with a sound base of conversational Brazilian Portuguese in a relatively short period of time, sufficient to cope in general holiday/business situations. The dialogues and reading texts present grammar and vocabulary in a systematic manner and each lesson is built around everyday situations such as visiting the bank or buying a drink in a café.

We recommend studying a little at a time but often – say about an hour a day – but, of course, individual preferences vary. First answer the exercises orally, then write them down before checking in the key at the end of the book. Certain exercises have no key as the answers are usually self-evident. As each lesson is completed, revise with the help of the concluding 'How much can you remember?' section. If you find that you can't remember a particular grammar point or structure, go back and revise the relevant part of the lesson before moving on to a new one. All the grammatical points raised are summarized in the compact reference grammar section at the back of the book.

Start a notebook for vocabulary, perhaps under different headings such as 'colours' or 'food', for ease of learning and reference. Two glossaries (Portuguese–English and English–Portuguese) are provided. Keep all your exercises in a second notebook. For help

on pronunciation, consult the guide at the beginning of the book and listen carefully to the recordings which accompany the course. These are, of course, optional but are of great assistance in improving listening and speaking skills.

The authors would like to thank Maria Cristina Sousa and Carolina Simões Ribeiro. Special thanks to our partners Bill Osborne, Patsy Sampaio and Angus McIntyre for their encouragement.

# A guide to Brazilian pronunciation

## 1 Vowels

- a** If this is stressed, it is pronounced like the *a* in father but shorter: **fado** (pronounced *fahdoo*). If it is unstressed, it is pronounced like the *e* in rather: **mesa** (pronounced *meza*) ('table').
- ã** This is pronounced like the *un* in *lung* but nasalized: **maçã** ('apple').
- e**
  - 1 If this is stressed, it sounds either like the *e* in *sell*: **perto** (pronounced *perhtoo*) ('near') or like the *ey* in *prey*: **saber** (pronounced *sabeyr*) ('to know'). If it is unstressed, it sounds like the *ey* in *prey*: **bebida** (pronounced *beybeeda*) ('drink').
  - 2 At the end of a word **e** is pronounced like *ee* in *peep*: **cidade** (pronounced *seedahjee*) ('city'). In European Portuguese, however, the final **e** is not pronounced: **tarde** (pronounced *tard*) ('late/afternoon').
  - 3 The word for 'and', **e**, is pronounced as *ee* in *sweep*.
- i** This is pronounced like the *e* in *evil*: **decidir** ('to decide'). When it is unstressed, it sounds like the *i* in *pin*: **idade** (pronounced *idahjee*) ('age').
- o** If this is stressed or has an acute accent (ô), it is pronounced like the *o* in *opera*, but closed before a nasal consonant: **fome** ('hunger'). When it is unstressed, it is pronounced like the *oo* in *book*: **gato** ('cat'), the commonest sound is similar to *oh*, like *o* in *police*: **motorista** ('driver').
- u** This is usually pronounced like the *oo* in *roof*: **rua** ('street'). In the following four groups, however, it is not pronounced: **gue**, **gui**, **que** and **qui**.

## 2 Consonants

- b** This is pronounced as in bank: **obrigado** (pronounced *obree-gahdoo*) ('thank you').
- c**
  - 1 This can be: soft, like the *s* in slow before an **e** or **i**: **cidade** (pronounced *seedahjee*) ('city'). If the **c** has a cedilla (**ç**), it is always soft;
  - 2 hard, as in card before an **o** or **a**: **cá** (pronounced *cah*) ('here').
- d** This is pronounced as in sad: **tenda** (pronounced *tendah*) ('tent'). It is pronounced like the *ji* in *jinx*, before and *i* or final unstressed **e**: **dificuldade** (pronounced *djeefeculdahjee*) ('difficulty').
- f** This is pronounced as in fair: **fechado** (pronounced *feshahdoo*) ('closed').
- g**
  - 1 This is soft before an **e** or **i**, as in the English *s* in pleasure: **gente** (pronounced *zhentjee*) ('people');
  - 2 hard before an **o**, **u** or **a**, as in get: **gato** (pronounced *gahtoo*) ('cat').
- h** This is never pronounced: **homem** (pronounced *omaing*) ('man').
  - 1 When it follows a **c** it is pronounced like *sh* in shore: **chuva** (pronounced *shoova*) ('rain').
  - 2 When it follows an **n**, it is pronounced like *ni* in onion: **banho** (pronounced *banyoo*) ('bath').
  - 3 When it follows an **I**, it is pronounced like *lli* in million: **mulher** (pronounced *moolyair*) ('woman').
- j** This is pronounced like the *s* in measure: **jovem** (pronounced *zhovaing*) ('young').
- l** This is pronounced as in look: **mala** ('suitcase'). At the end of a word it sounds fainter, like *ow* in cow: **natal** (Christmas).
- m** Except at the end of a word, this is pronounced as in machine: **maio** (pronounced *myyoo*) ('May'). At the end of a word it sounds like *ng* in sung: **bem** (pronounced *beying*) ('good').
- n** This is pronounced as in no: **nada** (pronounced *naahdah*) ('nothing').
- p** This is pronounced as in put: **pato** (pronounced *pahtoo*) ('duck').
- q** This is pronounced as in quick and is always followed by **u**: **quarenta** (pronounced *kwarentah*) ('forty').
- r** This is pronounced as in rain: **caro** (pronounced *cahroo*) ('dear'). Double **r** has a harder, more rolling sound: **carro** (pronounced *cahrroo*) ('car'). It is pronounced like the **h** in hat at the beginning of a word: **rir** (pronounced *heer*) ('to laugh').
- s**
  - 1 At the beginning of a word this is pronounced like the *s* in sun: **socorro!** (pronounced *sockorroo*) ('help!').

- 2** Between two vowels it is pronounced like the *s* in present: **casa** (pronounced *caahzah*) ('house').
- 3** At the end of a word it is pronounced like *s* in books: **livros** (pronounced *leevroos*) ('books').
- 4** *S* at the end of a word is pronounced like *sh* in push: **livros** (*leevroosh*) only in Rio de Janeiro.
- t** This is pronounced as in teacher: **tudo** (pronounced *toodooh*) ('everything'). Followed by **i** this is pronounced as *ch* in cheers: **vestido** (pronounced *veestcheedoo*) ('dress').
- v** This is pronounced as in video: **videocassete** (pronounced *veed-jeeocassetjee*) ('video-cassette player').
- x**
  - 1 At the beginning of a word this is pronounced like the *sh* in shone: **xale** (pronounced *shal*) ('shawl').
  - 2 In the prefix **ex** when followed by a vowel, it is pronounced like the *z* in zoo: **executivo** (pronounced *ezekootcheevo*) ('executive').
  - 3 Within a word and between two vowels, it can be pronounced either like the *sh* in shone: **roxo** (pronounced *rawshoo*) ('purple') or like the *cks* in racks: **tóxico** (pronounced *tokseekoo*) ('toxic').
  - 4 When it is followed by **ce** or **ci**, it is not pronounced: **excêntrico** (pronounced *esentreeecoo*) ('eccentric').
- z**
  - 1 At the beginning and in the middle of a word, this is pronounced like the *z* in zoo: **zanga** (pronounced *zangah*) ('anger'); **dizer** (pronounced *djeezair*) ('to say').
  - 2 At the end of a word it is pronounced like the final English *s*: **luz** (pronounced *loos*) ('light'). In Rio de Janeiro it is pronounced like the *s* in measure: **luz** (pronounced *loozh*).

## Diphthongs

- ãe** This sounds like *an* in *lang*: **mãe** ('mother').
- ão** This is pronounced like the *own* in *frown* but nasalized: **limão** ('lemon').
- õe** This is pronounced like the *on* in *song* but nasalized: **lições** ('lessons').
- ou** This is pronounced like the *ow* in *crow*: **comprou** ('you bought').
- ei** This is pronounced like the *ay* in *pray*: **dei** ('I gave').
- eu** This is pronounced *ayooh* (the first part rhymes with *hay*): **eu** ('I').
- ai** This is pronounced like the *ie* in *pie*: **pai** ('father').

## Stress

This normally falls on the penultimate syllable – **mesa** ('table'), **janela** ('window') – except when:

- 1 words end in **l**, **r** or **z**: **pantanal** ('swampland'), **libertar** ('to free'), **feliz** ('happy');
- 2 words end in **i**, **im**, **um** (and plural): **comi** ('I ate'), **jardin** ('garden'), **nenhum** ('no one'), **alguns** ('some');
- 3 there is an accent, indicating where the stress should fall: **fácil** ('easy'), **inglês** ('English').

Spoken Portuguese tends to run words together: **Lia o livro** ('He was reading the book') sounds like: *lee-er-oo-lee-vroo*.

## Accents

The English names of accents are as follows:

acute (é) grave (à) tilde (ã) circumflex (ê).

- (â), (ê), (ô). Note that:
- 1 the (â) has the same sound as (ã): **ângulo** ('angle'), **câmbio** ('exchange')
  - 2 the (ê) in: **inglês** ('English'), **bêbado** ('drunk') is pronounced as the *ey* in they.
  - 3 the (ô) in: **avô** ('grandfather'), **alô** ('hello'), **ôvo** ('egg') are pronounced like the *o* in hello.

# 1 Oi, tudo bem?

**Hi, is everything OK?**

In this lesson you will learn about:

- greetings, introductions, farewells
- ordering something to eat and drink
- using the present indicative tense of **ser** (to be)
- nationalities
- subject pronouns
- the definite and indefinite articles

## Dialogue 1

**Boa noite, como vai?**



A crowd has gathered in the foyer of the Cinema Ipiranga in São Paulo to see the film **Os Três Mosqueteiros** (The Three Musketeers). Some of the crowd greet each other

ALICE: Boa noite, como vai?

ANTÔNIO: Boa noite, vou bem obrigado, e você?

ALICE: Bem, obrigada.<sup>1</sup>

LUISA: Com licença, como se chama?

ISABEL: Chamo-me Isabel, e você?

LUISA: Chamo-me Luisa, muito prazer.

JORGE: Olá<sup>2</sup> colega!

JOSÉ: Olá, Jorge, você está bom?

JORGE: Estou ótimo!<sup>3</sup>

CARLOS: Oi, Alice, tudo bem?

ALICE: Oi, Carlos, como vai?

CARLOS: Muito bem, obrigado.

- 1 You say **obrigado** if you are male and **obrigada** if you are female.
- 2 This is the European Portuguese equivalent of **Oi!**
- 3 This is spelt **óptimo** in Portugal. Throughout this book we shall use the abbreviations (Br) for Brazilian spellings and equivalents and (Pt) for European Portuguese.

**ALICE:** *Good evening, how is it going?*

**ANTÔNIO:** *Good evening, I'm fine thanks, and you?*

**ALICE:** *I'm well, thank you.*

**LUISA:** *Excuse me, what's your name?*

**ISABEL:** *My name is Isabel, what's yours?*

**LUISA:** *My name is Luisa, pleased to meet you.*

**JORGE:** *Hi there, mate!*

**JOSÉ:** *Hi, Jorge, how are you?*

**JORGE:** *Great!*

**CARLOS:** *Hi, Alice, everything OK?*

**ALICE:** *Hi Carlos, how's it going?*

**CARLOS:** *Very well, thanks.*

### Exercise 1

If you have the recordings, listen again to the dialogues. Each time you hear the words or phrases listed in the chart below, tick them off. (If you don't have the recordings, re-read the dialogues, then cover the English and try writing the English translations, and vice versa.)

boa noite	você está	como se	tudo bem?	como vai?	chamo -me	vou bem	obrigado /a

### Exercise 2

Translate the following into English then back into Portuguese. (Use the dialogues on pages 7–8 as a guide.)

A: Com licença, como se chama?

B: Chamo-me Jorge, e você, como se chama?

A: Chamo-me Luisa, muito prazer.

A: Boa noite, como vai?

B: Vou bem obrigado, e você?

A: Bem, obrigada.

### Greetings

Depending on what time of day it is, you say:

**Bom dia** Good morning/Hello!  
(during the morning until lunch time)

**Boa tarde** Good afternoon/Good evening/Hello!  
(during the afternoon until dusk)

**Boa noite** Good evening/Good night/Hello!  
(from nightfall until daylight)

These greetings can also be used as farewells:

**Bom dia!** Good morning! i.e. Goodbye!  
(when taking leave)

When used as farewells, **bom dia**, **boa tarde** and **boa noite** are more informal than **adeus** which means 'goodbye'.

In Portuguese, either **boa tarde** or **boa noite** can be used to express the English 'good evening'. Essentially, although it may be fairly late in the evening – say after 7.00 p.m. – if an element of daylight still lingers, **boa tarde** is used. So, if it is 6.45 p.m. and dusk is falling but some light still remains:

**Boa tarde!** Good evening!

If it is 10.15 p.m., dusk has already fallen and the streetlights are on:

**Boa noite!** Good evening!

## Dialogue 2

### *You bem, obrigado*



What responses would you give to the following questions? If you have the recordings, use the pause button after each question to give yourself time to think of a reply. If you don't have the recordings, cover up the responses given by B and imagine how you might answer the questions

1

A: Boa noite, como vai?

B: *You bem, obrigado.*

2

A: Olá Paula! Você está boa?<sup>4</sup>

B: Estou bem, obrigada.

3

A: Boa tarde, chamo-me Isabel, e você, como se chama?

B: Boa tarde, chamo-me ...

1

A: *Good evening, how is it going?*

B: *I'm fine, thanks.*

2

A: *Hi there Paula! How are you?*

B: *Fine, thanks.*

3

A: *Good afternoon, my name is Isabel, what's yours?*

B: *Good afternoon, my name is ...*

<sup>4</sup> **Está(s) boa?** (How are you?) is the form of question asked of a female person and **Está(s) bom?** is the form asked of a male person.

## Pronunciation



Portuguese is a language which abounds in nasal sounds. If you have the recordings, listen to the following words:

<b>fim</b>	end	<b>bem</b>	well, fine	<b>opinião</b>	opinion
<b>com</b>	with	<b>ontem</b>	yesterday	<b>mão</b>	hand
<b>homem</b>	man	<b>sim</b>	yes	<b>pão</b>	bread
<b>assim</b>	thus	<b>bom</b>	good	<b>televisão</b>	television

### Rules for pronunciation

- 1 The letter **-m** at the end of a Portuguese word sounds like **-ng** in English. For example:

**falam** is pronounced *fahlang*

**bem** is pronounced *beying*

**sim** is pronounced *seeng*

**bom** is pronounced *bong*

**atum** is pronounced *atoong*

In each case the final **-g** is not pronounced.

- 2 The letters **-ão** at the end of a Portuguese word (the accent is called a 'tilde') sound like 'Ow!' in English with the sound being produced simultaneously from the mouth and the nose. For example:

**não** is pronounced *now*

**pão** is pronounced *pow*

## Subject pronouns

We need to use four abbreviations in the following list and elsewhere in this book. They are: (m), which means 'masculine'; (f), which means 'feminine'; (s), which means 'singular'; and (pl), which means 'plural'.

<b>eu</b>	I
<b>tu<sup>5</sup></b>	you (ms + fs)
<b>você</b>	you (ms + fs)
<b>o senhor</b>	you (ms)
<b>a senhora</b>	you (fs)
<b>ele</b>	he, it

<b>ela</b>	she, it
<b>nós</b>	we
<b>vocês</b>	you (mpl + fpl)
<b>os senhores</b>	you (mpl)
<b>as senhoras</b>	you (fpl)
<b>eles</b>	they (mpl)
<b>elas</b>	they (fpl)

5 This form for ‘you’ is most widely used in Portugal. It is also used in the south of Brazil, in Rio Grande do Sul.

Subject pronouns are often omitted in Portuguese, as the verb ending gives information about who is being referred to. For example:

**Somos de Londres** We are from London

**Vós** (‘you’ (pl)) is another way of expressing **vocês** or **os senhores/as senhoras**. It is still used in some parts of northern Portugal but largely it is found in prayers, speeches and classical literature.

One of the most noticeable differences between English and Portuguese is the variety of ways of expressing ‘you’, which can be translated as **você** (formal + informal), **tu** (informal), or **o senhor/a senhora** (formal), as well as their plural forms. For the time being, use **você** for ‘you’.

## The verb ser

One of the most frequently used verbs in Portuguese (as in English) is the irregular verb **ser** (‘to be’). The present indicative tense of **ser** is as follows:

<b>eu</b>	<b>sou</b>	I am
<b>tu</b>	<b>és</b>	you are (ms + fs)
<b>você</b>	<b>é</b>	you are (ms + fs)
<b>o senhor</b>	<b>é</b>	you are (ms)
<b>a senhora</b>	<b>é</b>	you are (fs)
<b>ele</b>	<b>é</b>	he is, it is
<b>ela</b>	<b>é</b>	she is, it is
<b>nós</b>	<b>somos</b>	we are
<b>vocês</b>	<b>são</b>	you are (mpl + fpl)

<b>os senhores</b>	<b>são</b>	you are (mpl)
<b>as senhoras</b>	<b>são</b>	you are (fpl)
<b>eles</b>	<b>são</b>	they are (mpl)
<b>elas</b>	<b>são</b>	they are (fpl)

### Exercise 3

Now match the correct subject pronoun to its form of the verb **ser**. The first has been done for you.

	<b>ele</b>	<b>nós</b>	<b>vocês</b>	<b>tu</b>	<b>eu</b>	<b>elas</b>	<b>você</b>
<b>é</b>	✓						
<b>são</b>							
<b>és</b>							
<b>sou</b>							
<b>somos</b>							

## Regular and irregular verbs

As in English, verbs can be either regular or irregular. An irregular verb is one which does not follow the normal pattern of stem + endings. The term ‘present indicative’ is the equivalent of the simple present in English and signifies a mood of certainty and fact. For example:

<b>Ela é muito rica</b>	She is very rich
<b>O ônibus parte amanhã</b>	The bus leaves tomorrow

## Uses of the present indicative tense

1 To express facts:

<b>Gosto de viajar</b>
I like travelling

2 A normal occurrence:

**O banco fecha às 3 horas**

The bank closes at 3 p.m.

3 Something happening at some future date which has an aura of intent about it:

**Vou às compras mais tarde**

I'll go shopping later

4 Something which has been going on and still is:

**Estuda português há anos**

He has been studying Portuguese for years (and is still doing so)

### Dialogue 3

#### Sou brasileiro



Listen to the next four mini-dialogues where people of various nationalities are chatting about where they are from

1

Q: Bom dia. Sou do Brasil. Sou brasileiro.<sup>6</sup> De onde você é?

A: Olá! Sou da França. Sou francesa.<sup>6</sup>

2

Q: Bom dia. Chamo-me Fernanda. Sou brasileira. Como se chama?

A: Chamo-me Stig. Sou da Holanda. Muito prazer.

3

Q: Olá! Tudo bem? Sou de Angola. Você também é de Angola?

A: Bom dia. Como vai? Não, não sou de Angola. Sou de Moçambique. Sou moçambicano.

4

Q: Olá! Chamo-me Cristina. Qual é a sua nacionalidade?

A: Muito prazer. Chamo-me Tracey. A minha nacionalidade é britânica.

1

Q: Good morning. I'm from Brazil. I'm Brazilian. Where are you from?

A: Hi! I'm from France. I'm French.

2

Q: Good morning. My name is Fernanda. I'm Brazilian. What's your name?

A: I'm Stig. I'm from Holland. I'm pleased to meet you.

3

Q: Hi! Is everything OK? I'm from Angola. Are you from Angola too?

A: Good morning. How's it going? No, I'm not from Angola. I'm from Mozambique. I'm Mozambican.

4

Q: Hi! My name's Cristina. What nationality are you?

A: Pleased to meet you. My name is Tracey. My nationality is British.

### Negatives

To make a sentence negative, put **não** ('no/not') before the verb:

**Não sou inglês**

I'm not English

**Não, não sou do Brasil**

No, I'm not from Brazil

### Exercise 4

Now imagine you are in the group. How would you say: 'Hi! How are you? I'm fine, thanks. My name is ... What's your name? Are you from France? Oh, you're from England! I'm from Holland. Pleased to meet you!' You should find all the necessary expressions in the material covered so far.

<sup>6</sup> Nationalities do not require a capital letter.

## Forming feminine adjectives

In the dialogues about nationalities, the endings used were not always the same. This is because they change according to whether a male or female person is speaking or is being addressed:

**Sou inglês**

I'm English (male person speaking)

**Sou inglesa**

I'm English (female person speaking)

**Você é angolana?**

Are you Angolan? (asked of a female person)

As you can see from the above examples, to form the feminine of a nationality ending in **-ês**, the circumflex accent (^) is dropped and an **-a** is added. In the case of an adjective ending in **-o**, the **-o** is dropped and replaced with an **-a**. (Some nationalities do not conform to this rule but they need not concern us at this stage.)

### Exercise 5a

Now match up the correct Portuguese phrase with its English equivalent in the following examples.

**Sou brasileira** Are you English? (f)

**Sou português** I am Dutch (m)

**Ele é angolano** She is Scottish

**Você é inglesa?** I am Portuguese (m)

**Ela é escocesa** I am Brazilian (f)

**Sou holandês** He is Angolan

## Introducing someone

**Apresento-lhe a Joana**

I'd like you to meet/This is Joana

**Apresento-lhes ...**

I'd like you to meet ... (when you are introducing someone to more than one person)

### Exercise 5b

Now try introducing the following people using the information given below each figure. Say in Portuguese: 'I'd like you to meet (name). He/she is from (country). He/she is (nationality).'



Tom  
England  
English



Gabriella  
Italy  
Italian



Pelé  
Brazil  
Brazilian



Hans  
Germany  
German

## Vocabulary

<b>Itália</b>	Italy	<b>italiano/a</b>	Italian
<b>Brasil</b>	Brazil	<b>brasileiro/a</b>	Brazilian
<b>Alemanha</b>	Germany	<b>alemão/alemã</b>	German

## Exercise 6

Can you give the following in Portuguese? Wherever ‘you’ occurs, for the moment use the **você** form. Answers are in the key at the end of the book.

- 1 Are you English? (f) \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 I am Scottish (m) \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 He is Portuguese \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Is she Brazilian? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 You are Angolan (f) \_\_\_\_\_

Now cover up the English and translate the Portuguese into English.

## Sou de, sou do, etc.

You may have noticed in Dialogue 3 that you cannot always say simply **sou de** (‘I’m from’). Certain countries need the Portuguese word for ‘the’, which will either be **o** (m) or **a** (f). This then joins with **de** to produce the following:

- |                                   |                      |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------|
| <b>Sou da (de + a) Holanda</b>    | I’m from Holland     |
| <b>Você é do (de + o) Brasil?</b> | Are you from Brazil? |

Some countries are plural:

- |                               |                            |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>os Estados Unidos</b>      | the United States          |
| <b>Sou dos Estados Unidos</b> | I’m from the United States |
| <b>de + os → dos</b>          |                            |

There is no real pattern as to why some countries require the definite article or why some are considered masculine while others are feminine. Just note them as they arise.

## ‘Yes’ and ‘no’

Instead of replying with a bald ‘yes’ (**sim**) or ‘no’ (**não**), in Portuguese you repeat the verb:

- |                        |                   |
|------------------------|-------------------|
| <b>Você é japonês?</b> | Are you Japanese? |
| <b>Sou, sim</b>        | Yes               |

## The gender of nouns

All Portuguese nouns are either masculine or feminine, even if you are referring to an inanimate object, ‘it’.

- |                             |                           |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>Como é o computador?</b> | What’s the computer like? |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|

- |                           |                               |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <b>(Ele) é muito útil</b> | It’s very useful (lit.: ‘he’) |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------|

Nouns ending in **-o**, **-im**, **-om** and **-um** are generally masculine. Those ending in **-a**, **-ã**, **-gem**, **-dade**, **-ice**, **-ez**, **-ção** and **-são** are generally feminine, although there are exceptions.

## The definite article

English does not have the problem of distinguishing between the gender of words. In Portuguese, the word for ‘the’ changes according to what is being referred to and every noun is either masculine or feminine.

For words in the singular you have a choice of either:

- |                             |                         |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| <b>o</b> (masculine words)  | (pronounced <i>oo</i> ) |
| <b>a</b> (feminine words)   | (pronounced <i>er</i> ) |
| <b>o livro</b> (m) the book |                         |
| <b>a casa</b> (f) the house |                         |

and for words in the plural:

- |                                  |                           |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>os</b> (masculine words)      | (pronounced <i>oosh</i> ) |
| <b>as</b> (feminine words)       | (pronounced <i>ersh</i> ) |
| <b>os livros</b> (mpl) the books |                           |
| <b>as casas</b> (fpl) the houses |                           |

## The indefinite article

Again, this changes according to whether a noun is masculine or feminine:

<b>um</b> (masculine words)	(pronounced <i>oom</i> )
<b>uma</b> (feminine words)	(pronounced <i>oomah</i> )

### Examples

**um jornal** (m) a newspaper      **uma revista** (f) a magazine

Unlike in English, these articles have a plural form translated as 'some' or not translated at all:

<b>uns</b> (masculine words)	(pronounced <i>oons</i> )
<b>umas</b> (feminine words)	(pronounced <i>oomas</i> )

### Examples

**uns óculos** (some) spectacles  
**umas canetas** (some) pens

### Exercise 7

Match up the following words with their correct article, definite or indefinite, in the box below.

- |         |                                  |                   |
|---------|----------------------------------|-------------------|
| 1 _____ | <b>celular</b> <sup>7</sup> (ms) | the mobile phone  |
| 2 _____ | <b>mulher</b> (fs)               | the woman         |
| 3 _____ | <b>bolachas</b> (fpl)            | (some) biscuits   |
| 4 _____ | <b>relógios</b> (mpl)            | the watches       |
| 5 _____ | <b>sorvetes</b> (mpl)            | (some) ice creams |
| 6 _____ | <b>colinas</b> (fpl)             | the hills         |

<b>os</b>	<b>a</b>	<b>uns</b>	<b>as</b>	<b>umas</b>	<b>o</b>
-----------	----------	------------	-----------	-------------	----------

7 **o telemóvel** (Pt) mobile phone.

## Forming the plural

(a) Nouns ending in a vowel (but not **ão**) add **s**

<i>singular</i>		<i>plural</i>	
<b>o gato</b>	the cat	<b>os gatos</b>	the cats
<b>a cidade</b>	the city	<b>as cidades</b>	the cities

(b) Nouns ending in **r** or **z** add **es**

<b>o sabor</b>	the flavour	<b>os sabores</b>	the flavours
<b>a voz</b>	the voice	<b>as vozes</b>	the voices

(c) Nouns ending in **m** become **ns**

<b>o homem</b>	the man	<b>os homens</b>	the men
----------------	---------	------------------	---------

(d) Nouns already ending in **s** add **es** if the stress is on the last syllable:

<b>o país</b>	the country	<b>os países</b>	the countries
<b>o lápis</b>	the pencil	<b>os lápis</b>	the pencils

In the second example, the spelling of the noun is unchanged because the stress falls on the penultimate syllable.

(See pages 147 and 148 for more on plurals.)

### Exercise 8

Can you give the plural forms of the following?

- |                    |         |                  |           |
|--------------------|---------|------------------|-----------|
| 1 <b>uma nuvem</b> | a cloud | 2 <b>o prato</b> | the dish  |
| 3 <b>um pente</b>  | a comb  | 4 <b>a praia</b> | the beach |

### Exercise 9

Now give the singular forms of these words. The first has been done for you:

- |                        |                  |                   |
|------------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| 1 <b>os tapetes</b>    | the carpets      | → <b>o tapete</b> |
| 2 <b>as cadeiras</b>   | the chairs       |                   |
| 3 <b>os lápis</b>      | the pencils      |                   |
| 4 <b>umas revistas</b> | (some) magazines |                   |
| 5 <b>uns carros</b>    | (some) cars      |                   |

## Pronunciation

If you have the recordings, listen to the different pronunciations of the letter **s** in Portuguese.

- s** at the beginning of a word is as in the English ‘same’: **sou** (I am)
- s** at the end of a word is like the final English *s*: **inglês** (English)
- s** between two vowels is as in the English ‘zebra’: **irlandesa** (Irish)

### Exercise 10

Bearing in mind who is being referred to in each case, do you think that the sentences below are all correct? Provide the correct version of each sentence where necessary.

- 1 **Kathleen é irlandês**
- 2 **Jorge é português**
- 3 **Isabel é portuguesa**
- 4 **Ela é holandês**
- 5 **Você (Matthew) é inglês e [and] eu (Jane) sou escocês**
- 6 **Andrew é escocês mas [but] Jules é francesa** (French)

### Exercise 11

Read the following short passage and answer the questions which follow:

**Chamo-me Jorge. Sou do Brasil. Sou brasileiro. Apresento-lhe o Paulo. Ele é de Portugal; é português. Qual é a nacionalidade da Isabel? Ela é italiana? Ah, ela é brasileira também.**

- 1 True or false? Jorge introduces himself by stating that he is from Italy.
- 2 What does he say about Paulo?
- 3 What information does he want to know about Isabel?
- 4 What is he surprised to find out?

## Food and drink

Getting the waiter’s attention:

- |                   |            |
|-------------------|------------|
| <b>Faz favor!</b> | Excuse me! |
| <b>Por favor!</b> | Excuse me! |

What you will be asked:

- |                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| <b>Que deseja?</b>  | What would you like?<br>(to one person)           |
| <b>Que desejam?</b> | What would you like?<br>(to more than one person) |

Asking for something to eat and drink:

<b>um café</b>	a black coffee
<b>um cafezinho</b>	an espresso
<b>um chá</b>	a tea
<b>uma cerveja</b>	a beer
<b>um chope</b>	a half pint of (draught) beer
<b>uma água mineral</b>	a mineral water
<b>uma água mineral com gás</b>	a fizzy mineral water
<b>uma água mineral sem gás</b>	a still mineral water
<b>um café com leite<sup>8</sup></b>	a large white coffee
<b>um sanduíche de presunto</b>	a ham sandwich
<b>uma sandes de queijo (Pt)</b>	a cheese sandwich
<b>um sanduíche<sup>9</sup></b>	a sandwich
<b>uma tosta mista (Pt)</b>	a toasted ham and cheese sandwich
<b>um misto quente (Br)</b>	a toasted ham and cheese sandwich
<b>um cachorro quente</b>	a hot-dog
<b>um bolo</b>	a cake

Saying ‘please’, ‘thanks’ and ‘how much?’

- |                           |                       |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>faz favor</b>          | please                |
| <b>por favor</b>          | please                |
| <b>(muito) obrigado/a</b> | thank you (very much) |
| <b>quanto é?</b>          | How much is it?       |

<sup>8</sup> um café com leite; in Portugal **um galão**.

<sup>9</sup> In Portugal **uma sanduíche**.

## Dialogue 4

### Faz favor! ●●

See if you can discover what Jorge and Cristina are ordering

- JORGE: Faz favor!
- EMPREGADO: Boa tarde. Que desejam?
- JORGE: Boa tarde, um café e um bolo, por favor.
- EMPREGADO: E a senhora?
- CRISTINA: Um café com leite e um sanduíche de presunto, por favor.
- EMPREGADO: Mais alguma coisa? (*Anything else?*)
- JORGE: Mais nada, muito obrigado.  
(*Nothing else, thanks very much.*)

Go through Dialogue 4 again. Now it's your turn to order for them:

- (a) For Jorge, ask for a small black coffee and a cake.
- (b) For Cristina, ask for a large white coffee and a ham sandwich, and reply, 'Nothing else, thanks very much' to the waiter's last question.

### Exercise 12

Here is a bill (**uma conta**) from a snack bar (**uma lanchonete**) but it has a few things missing from the list below in English. Can you discover which things and add them to the list in Portuguese:

a toasted ham and cheese sandwich	a cake, a white coffee
a ham sandwich	a guaraná <sup>10</sup> , a beer
a cheese sandwich	a fizzy mineral water

### Lanchonete Carioca

1 sanduíche de presunto	.....
1 misto quente	.....
1 café com leite	.....
1 guaraná	.....

10 Brazilian soft drink made from the seeds of an Amazonian plant.

## How much can you remember?

- 1 Fill in the missing words:

- LIDIA: \_\_\_\_\_ se chama?  
PABLO: \_\_\_\_\_ -me Pablo.  
LIDIA: \_\_\_\_\_ espanhol? (Spanish)  
PABLO: Sou. \_\_\_\_\_ de Madrid. E você?  
LIDIA: Sou \_\_\_\_\_, sou de Portugal.

- 2 What greeting would you give in Portuguese?

It is 9 a.m. in the morning \_\_\_\_\_!  
Now it is 6 p.m. in the evening \_\_\_\_\_!  
And now it is 11 p.m. at night \_\_\_\_\_!

- 3 Ask someone you have just met:

If he is English. Find out where he is from. Ask his name. Say you are (name) and you are from Italy.

- 4 (a) Name three drinks you might order.

(b) Would you eat: **um cafezinho, um bolo, um chope?**

(c) Would you drink: **um sanduíche, uma cerveja, um café com leite?**

- 5 Can you provide the questions which match the following replies?

- Boa tarde, você bem obrigado.
- Chamo-me Isabel.
- Sou de Paris.
- Tudo bem, obrigado.
- A minha nacionalidade é espanhola.

- 6 Now talk about yourself. Say what your name is, what nationality you are, and where you are from.

- 7 Read this short passage, answer the questions which follow and then translate it into English:

**Carlos e Fernanda são brasileiros. Vivem no Rio de Janeiro no Brasil. Vêm a Portugal todos os anos para visitarem o irmão deles, José, que vive no Porto.**

- What nationality are Fernanda and Carlos?
- Where do they come from?

3 Why do they visit Portugal and how often do they make the trip?

### Vocabulary

<b>vivem</b>	they live
<b>vêm</b>	they come
<b>a</b>	to
<b>todos os anos</b>	each year
<b>o irmão deles</b>	their brother
<b>que vive no Porto</b>	who lives in Oporto

### Vocabulary

In order to build up your vocabulary, why not start a small notebook which contains various headings? For example:

<i>p. 1.</i> Greetings	<i>p. 2.</i> Drinks	<i>p. 3.</i> Various
<b>Tudo bem?</b> How are you?	<b>um chá</b> a tea	<b>Sim</b> Yes <b>Bem</b> Well

Use your dictionary to add to your word lists. For example, you might want to know how to ask for other drinks not listed in this lesson, or to extend the list of nationalities. As you consult your dictionary, make a point of noting down at the same time the gender of a word (i.e. whether it is masculine or feminine). For example, for 'house' you will find **casa** (f). You already know from this lesson the word for the English 'a' which can be either **um**, **uma**, **uns** or **umas** depending on the noun involved, and the different forms for 'the' in Portuguese: **o**, **a**, **os**, **as**. In this case, **casa** is feminine singular:

**uma casa** a house

**a casa** the house

## 2 Gosto de viajar

### I like to travel

In this lesson you will learn about:

- using the verbs **ser** and **estar**
- expressing likes and dislikes
- using the present indicative of regular verbs
- describing yourself and saying what you do
- telling the time
- the days of the week

The following Brazilian speakers were asked to give a brief description of their lives, likes, dislikes and personalities by the local radio station. **O locutor** ('the radio announcer') asks them to **Fale-me de você** ('tell me a bit about yourself')

### Dialogue 1

**Álvaro** 

O LOCUTOR: Fale-me de você.

ÁLVARO: Sou cantor de bossa nova.<sup>1</sup> Trabalho num<sup>2</sup> clube no<sup>3</sup> Guarujá. Sou casado mas separado. Moro num apartamento perto da praia. Gosto de tocar violão; de arte. Não gosto de violência; de intolerância. Personalidade? Sou bastante tímido mas gosto muito de me divertir.

*I am a bossa nova singer. I work in a club in the Guarujá. I'm married but separated. I live in a flat near the beach. I like playing the guitar; art. I don't like violence; intolerance. Personality? I'm quite shy but I like a good laugh.*

- 1 **Bossa nova** is a mixture of samba and jazz.  
 2 **num clube: em + um → num** ('in a')  
 Similarly, with the feminine indefinite article: **em + uma → numa**
- Moro numa casa** I live in a house
- 3 **no Guarujá: em + o → no** ('in the')  
 Similarly, with the feminine definite article: **em + a → na**
- Trabalho na lanchonete** I work in the snack bar  
**em** can also mean 'on': **na televisão** on the TV

## Dialogue 2

### Paulo

- O LOCUTOR: Fale-me de você.
- PAULO: Sou eletricista.<sup>4</sup> Trabalho numa companhia no centro de Copacabana, no Rio. Sou casado. Moro numa casa moderna. Gosto de esportes; de jogar futebol.<sup>5</sup> Não gosto da comida chinesa; de palavras cruzadas. Personalidade? Sou extrovertido<sup>6</sup> e bastante preguiçoso.

*I'm an electrician. I work in a company in the centre of Copacabana in Rio. I'm married. I live in a modern house. I like sports; playing football. I don't like Chinese food; crosswords. Personality? I'm an extrovert and quite lazy.*

4 **Sou eletricista** 'I'm an electrician'. There is no need for 'a/an' with professions.

5 **tocar** means 'to play (music)' while **jogar** means 'to play (sport)'.

6 **Sou extrovertido** 'I'm an extrovert'. There is no need to say 'a' or 'an' when one is describing oneself in Portuguese.

## Dialogue 3

### Graça

- O LOCUTOR: Fale-me de você.
- GRAÇA: Sou vendedora. Trabalho numa loja de brinquedos nos<sup>7</sup> arredores de Curitiba, no Brasil. Não sou casada.<sup>8</sup> Sou solteira. Moro num apartamento alugado. Gosto de viajar; de cinema. Não gosto de

tempo frio; de transporte público. Personalidade?  
 Sou faladora e descontraída.

*I'm a shop assistant. I work in a toy shop on the outskirts of Curitiba in Brazil. I'm not married. I'm single. I live in a rented flat. I like travelling; the cinema. I don't like cold weather; public transport. Personality? I'm talkative and laid-back.*

- 7 **Nos arredores: em + os (mpl) → nos** ('in the')  
 Similarly, with the feminine plural definite article:

**Há nova tecnologia nas fábricas**  
 There is new technology in the factories  
**em + as → nas** ('in the')

- 8 **Não sou casada:** remember that, if the speaker is feminine, the adjective usually changes at the end from **o** to **a**.

## The present indicative tense of regular verbs

Revise **regular** and **irregular** verbs and the uses of the present indicative tense in Lesson 1.

	<b>trabalhar</b>	<i>to work</i>
<b>eu</b>	<b>trabalho</b>	I work
<b>tu</b>	<b>trabalhas</b>	you work
<b>você</b>	<b>trabalha</b>	you work
<b>o senhor</b>	<b>trabalha</b>	you work
<b>a senhora</b>	<b>trabalha</b>	you work
<b>ele</b>	<b>trabalha</b>	he, it works
<b>ela</b>	<b>trabalha</b>	she, it works
<b>nós</b>	<b>trabalhamos</b>	we work
<b>vocês</b>	<b>trabalham</b>	you work
<b>os senhores</b>	<b>trabalham</b>	you work
<b>as senhoras</b>	<b>trabalham</b>	you work
<b>eles</b>	<b>trabalham</b>	they work
<b>elas</b>	<b>trabalham</b>	they work

**Trabalhar** is an example of a regular Portuguese **-ar** verb. The letters **-ar** are removed from the stem (**trabalh-**) and are replaced by: **-o**, **-as**, **-a**, **-amos** and **-am**. These five endings are all you need to learn for the present indicative tense of any regular verb ending in **-ar**.

Two more groups of verbs exist in Portuguese, which end in either **-er** or **-ir**. The present indicative of these two groups of verbs are formed in the same way as that of **-ar** verbs:

**-er** verbs:

**vender** ('to sell') → **vend-** plus the endings: **-o**, **-es**, **-e**, **-emos** and **-em**

**-ir** verbs:

**partir** ('to leave') → **part-**, plus the endings: **-o**, **-es**, **-e**, **-imos** and **-em**

These endings are added to the stem of the verb as in the case of the **-ar** verb **trabalhar**. Here are two more examples:

<i>comer</i> to eat	<i>decidir</i> to decide
<i>como</i>	<i>decido</i> I
<i>comes</i>	<i>decides</i> you
<i>come</i>	<i>decide</i> he, she, it, you (s)
<i>comemos</i>	<i>decidimos</i> we
<i>comem</i>	<i>decidem</i> they, you (pl)

### Exercise 1

Write out in full, referring to the above chart, the following verbs: **viver** ('to live') and **dividir** ('to divide').

## The verb **gostar de** ('to like')

**Gostar de** is another example of an **-ar** verb but this verb is one which is always followed by the preposition **de** ('of/from'):

<b>Gosto de cantar</b>	I like to sing (I like singing)
<b>Gosto de viajar</b>	I like to travel (I like travelling)

If **gostar de** is followed by the complete form of the verb – i.e. the infinitive form: 'to sing', 'to dance', etc. – the **de** will remain unaltered as in the examples above. If referring to a *specific* noun, however, the **de** contracts with the definite article, **-o**, **-a**, **-os** or **-as**, according to whether the noun is masculine, feminine or in the plural.

**Examples:**

**gosto de + verb**

... **trabalhar**

... **nadar**

... **beber café**

**gosto de + noun**

... **bolos** (in general)

... **revistas**

... **música**

... **computadores**

**gosto de + noun (specific)**

**gosto da música jazz**

**gosto da poesia do T S Eliot**

**Vocabulary**

<b>nadar</b>	to swim	<b>revistas</b> (fpl) magazines
<b>computadores</b> (mpl)	computers	

### Exercise 2

Can you fill in the correct form of **de**?

<b>Gosto d —— roupa</b> (f)	I like clothes
<b>Gostamos d —— fruta</b> (f)	We like fruit
<b>Gostam d —— viajar</b>	They like travelling
<b>Gosta d —— cinema francês</b>	He likes French cinema
<b>Gostas d —— rádio</b> (m)	You like the radio
<b>Gostam d —— casas modernas</b> (fpl)	They like modern houses

### Exercise 3

Re-read Dialogues 2 and 3. Imagine that Paulo and Graça have exactly the same likes and dislikes, and then describe them: 'they like ...'/'they don't like ...'. For example: **Gostam de esportes**.

### Exercise 4

Can you give your likes/dislikes from the list below? Write out in full **gosto de/não gosto de** ...

**a música 'rock'**

rock music

**ver as telenovelas**

to watch soaps on TV

<b>a política</b>	politics
<b>ler poesia</b>	to read poetry
<b>os filmes de Woody Allen</b>	Woody Allen films
<b>a energia nuclear</b>	nuclear energy
<b>escrever cartas</b>	to write letters
<b>a editoração eletrônica</b>	desk-top publishing

(Re-read or listen again to the dialogues at the beginning of the lesson as a guide.)

### Exercise 5

Re-read Dialogue 1. Now you have to describe Álvaro's life to someone else. 'He sings . . .'; 'he doesn't like . . .', etc. Try to translate the rest of the details Álvaro reveals about himself in Portuguese.

### Exercise 6

Read the following passage, then answer the questions below:

**A família Gonçalves vive em Planaltina, nos arredores de Brasília. A mãe (Lucília) é telefonista num consultório médico. O pai (José) é mecânico numa garagem.**

- 1 Where does the family live exactly?
- 2 What do the parents do for a living?

### Exercise 7

Can you write these potted histories for two singers, one male, one female:

JORGE: Sou cantor . . .

**casado São Paulo casa tímido a ópera (sim gosto)  
o futebol (não gosto)**

CLARA: Sou cantora . . .

**solteiro Manaus (Amazonas) casa preguiçoso o andar<sup>9</sup>  
(sim gosto) o esporte (não gosto)**

## The endings of adjectives and nouns

Remember that the adjectives describing Clara ('single', 'lazy') will change because she is a female speaker (refer to the section about nationalities in the first lesson). Nouns denoting professions also alter according to who is speaking or being referred to. There are a variety of ways in which adjectives can end, as the following demonstrate.

- (1) The masculine singular form ends in **-o** (but not **-ão**):

<i>masculine:</i>		<i>feminine:</i>	
<b>honesto</b>	(s)	→	<b>honesta</b> (-o → -a)
<b>honestos</b>	(pl)	→	<b>honestas</b> (-os → -as)
<b>o engenheiro</b>	(s)	→	<b>a engenheira</b> engineer
<b>os engenheiros</b>	(pl)	→	<b>as engenheiras</b> engineers

- (2) The masculine singular form ends in **-e**

<b>inteligente</b>	→	<b>inteligente</b> (no change takes place)
<b>inteligentes</b>	→	<b>inteligentes</b>
<b>o gerente</b>	→	<b>a gerente</b> manager
<b>os gerentes</b>	→	<b>as gerentes</b> managers

- (3) The masculine singular form ends in **-r**

<b>falador</b>	→	<b>faladora</b> (add <b>-a</b> )
<b>faladores</b>	→	<b>faladoras</b>
<b>o professor</b>	→	<b>a professora</b> teacher
<b>os professores</b>	→	<b>as professoras</b> teachers

- (4) The masculine singular form ends in **-a**

<b>pessimista</b>	→	<b>pessimista</b> (no change takes place)
<b>pessimistas</b>	→	<b>pessimistas</b>
<b>o jornalista</b>	→	<b>a jornalista</b> journalist
<b>os jornalistas</b>	→	<b>as jornalistas</b> journalists

## The position and agreement of adjectives

Adjectives usually follow the noun and agree in gender and number with the noun to which they refer:

**a arquitetura moderna**  
modern architecture

**um atleta vigoroso**  
a powerful athlete

<sup>9</sup> **o andar** or **o caminhar** walking

<b>as aulas de direção caras</b>	<b>os vinhos tintos</b>
expensive driving lessons	red wines

When an adjective refers jointly to a masculine and a feminine noun, the adjective always takes the masculine plural form:

**três canetas (fpl) e dois lápis (mpl) vermelhos**

### Exercise 8

Graça wants to change her job (**o emprego**) so she consults Álvaro who, before taking up bossa nova singing, tried out quite a few different occupations. How would Graça write out a similar list of professions? And which job does she finally choose?

Álvaro

Graça

<b>Professions</b>		<b>Professions</b>	
médico		uma médica . . . ?	
jornalista		Não.	
padeiro		uma . . . . . ?	
gerente			
pintor		uma jornalista.	
carpinteiro		Sim!	

### Vocabulary

<b>o médico</b>	doctor	<b>o gerente</b>	manager
<b>o pintor</b>	painter	<b>o jornalista</b>	journalist
<b>o carpinteiro</b>	carpenter	<b>o padeiro</b>	baker

## Cardinal Numbers

Memorize the following numbers from 1 to 50:

	<i>pronounced:</i>
<b>um, uma<sup>10</sup></b>	1 oom, oomah
<b>dois, duas<sup>10</sup></b>	2 dois, dooers
<b>três</b>	3 tres
<b>quatro</b>	4 kwahtroo
<b>cinco</b>	5 seenkoo
<b>seis</b>	6 says
<b>sete</b>	7 setjee
<b>otto</b>	8 oitoo
<b>nove</b>	9 nov
<b>dez</b>	10 des
<b>onze</b>	11 onz
<b>doze</b>	12 doz
<b>treze</b>	13 trez
<b>catorze</b>	14 katorz
<b>quinze</b>	15 keenz
<b>dezesseis</b>	16 dizesays (Pt dezasseis)
<b>dezessete</b>	17 dizesetjee (Pt dezassete)
<b>dezoito</b>	18 dizoitoo
<b>dezenove</b>	19 dizenov (Pt dezanove)
<b>vinte</b>	20 veentjee
<b>vinte e um/uma</b>	21 veentjee-ee-oom/oomer
<b>vinte e dois/duas</b> etc.	22 veentjee-ee-dois/dooers
<b>trinta</b>	30 treenta
<b>trinta e cinco</b>	35 treenta-ee-seenkoo
<b>quarenta</b>	40 kwarenta
<b>cinquenta</b>	50 seenkwenta

10 ‘one’ and ‘two’ (**um/a, dois/duas**) agree with what is being referred to: **uma rua** (f) (‘a street’) / **um café** (m) (‘a coffee’)

### Exercise 9

Here are three advertisements from a newspaper (**um jornal**) for various staff (**o pessoal**). Can you answer the following questions with the aid of the vocabulary below?

O ESTADO DE S.PAULO

**SECRETÁRIA DIRETORIA**

**ADMETE**

Os interessados deverão enviar Curriculum Vitae com pretensão salarial para C. Postal 223 CEP 05067-900 sob o código CLS-002 São Paulo/SP

- Formação universitária ou cursando, sólidos conhecimentos de microinformática e inglês.
- Redação própria, experiência mínima de 2 anos.
- Iniciativa, dinamismo e organização são características imprescindíveis.

**CABELEIREIRAS/OS PRECISAM-SE**

Com prática. Boa remuneração. Fernanda Rosa Cabeleireiros.  
Tel.: 082-357889

### Vocabulary

seleciona	selects
admite pessoas	staff wanted/required
precisam-se	wanted/required
cabeleireiros/as	hairdressers
gerente de marketing	marketing manager
secretária de diretoria	executive secretary
requisitos necessários	important requirements
com prática/experiência	with experience
boa apresentação	good appearance
redação própria	writing skills
fluência em inglês	fluent in English
iniciativa e organização	initiative and organization
ambição e dinamismo	ambition and dynamism
boa remuneração	good remuneration
experiência na área	experience required
nível superior	university graduate
automóvel imprescindível	car essential
enviar Curriculum Vitae	send C.V.
pretensão salarial	requested salary

- 1 Can you find the advertisement for hairdressers? Is the pay good?
- 2 What qualities are required for the secretarial post?
- 3 Which advertisement would prefer post-graduate applicants?

**GERENTE DE MARKETING**  
Profissional dinâmico e auto-motivado, com vivência de 3 anos na área de marketing/vendas, experiência na supervisão de equipes. Nível superior completo, desejável fluência em inglês e pós-graduação em Marketing, p/ agência de Marketing Internacional. C. V. c/ prt. sal. p/ o FAX: 531-7838 ou CP 21007- SP. CEP 04698-970.

**CABELEIREIRAS/OS  
PRECISAM-SE**  
Com prática. Boa remuneração. Fernanda Rosa Cabeleireiros.  
Tel.: 082-357889

### Days of the week: Os dias da semana

#### Exercise 10

Look at this page from Paulo's diary (**a agenda**). He had already marked in his commitments for the week but suddenly remembers that he must arrange a meeting ...

segunda-feira	
terça-feira	<i>comprar um presente</i>
quarta-feira	<i>escrever uma carta</i>
quinta-feira	<i>ir à universidade</i>
sexta-feira	
sábado	<i>descansar</i>
domingo	<i>visitar amigos</i>

### Vocabulary

<b>comprar um presente</b>	to buy a gift
<b>ir à universidade</b>	to go to the university
<b>descansar</b>	to rest
<b>visitar amigos</b>	to visit friends
<b>escrever uma carta</b>	to write a letter
<b>quarta-feira</b>	(there is no need for the article)
<b>na segunda-feira</b>	on Monday
<b>nos domingos</b>	(the article is needed when 'on' is used)
<b>trabalho na quarta(-feira)</b>	on Sundays
<b>hoje</b>	I work on Wednesday
<b>quinze dias</b>	today
<b>todos os dias</b>	fortnight
<b>que dia é hoje?</b>	everyday
<b>que dia da semana é hoje?</b>	what date is it today?
	what day of the week is today?

- 1 What days does he have free?
- 2 Is he available on Thursday?
- 3 He is extremely busy on Friday. True or false?
- 4 What does Paulo do at the weekend (**o fim de semana**)?

### Contraction

When **a** means ‘at/to’ and precedes the definite article **o/a/os/as**, the words contract as follows:

<b>vou à universidade</b> (fs)	I'm going to the university ( <b>a + a</b> )
<b>vão ao parque</b> (ms)	they go to the park ( <b>a + o</b> )
<b>vai às lojas</b> (fpl)	he goes to the shops ( <b>a + as</b> )
<b>sai aos domingos</b> (mpl)	she goes out on Sundays ( <b>a + os</b> )

Days of the week are feminine except for **sábado** and **domingo**. The ‘-feira’ element can be dropped:

**Vou na segunda** I'm going on Monday

## Dialogue 4

### Um encontro

Paulo wants to arrange a meeting (**marcar um encontro** or **arranjar uma reunião**) with someone who works on the floor below him. First he has to describe himself over the telephone

PAULO: Como é que nos vamos reconhecer? Eu sou muito alto, um pouco gordo, moreno e tenho uma barba.  
JOANA: E eu sou bastante baixa, magra, uso óculos e tenho cabelo crespo. Então, junto do elevador na sexta à uma hora. Até logo!

PAULO: How will we recognise each other? I'm very tall, well-built, dark and I have a beard.  
JOANA: And I'm quite small, slim, wear glasses and I have curly hair. So, next to the lift on Friday at one. See you then!

*Vocabulary:* **à uma hora** at one o'clock

### Muito and pouco

Used adjectivally **muito** and **pouco** agree with the noun referred to:

<b>Tenho muitos vídeos</b>	I have a lot of videos
<b>Há muita gente na rua</b>	There are many people in the street
<b>Lêem poucas revistas</b>	They read few magazines
<b>A loja tem pouca variedade</b>	The shop has little variety

If used adverbially, however, both **muito** and **pouco** are invariable:

<b>Somos muito altos</b>	We are very tall
<b>Estas luvas são muito caras</b>	These gloves are very expensive
<b>Usamos pouco a varanda</b>	We do not use the verandah much
<b>Conhece pouco as obras de Shakespeare</b>	He knows little about Shakespeare's works

### Adjectives

Study the following descriptions of physical appearance (**a aparência física**):

**(Eu) Sou de estatura média**  
I am of average build

**(Ele/Ela/Você) é alto/alta**  
He/she is; You are tall

**Tenho cabelo** ('hair') **preto/loiro/ruivo/castanho**  
I have black/blonde/red/brown hair

**Tenho cabelo comprido/curto/liso/crespo**  
I have long/short/straight/curly hair

**Tenho olhos** ('eyes') **azuis/verdes/castanhos**  
I have blue/green/brown eyes

**Tem** (he/she has; you have), etc.

## Vocabulary

<b>alto/a</b>	tall	<b>médio/a</b>	average
<b>baixo/a</b>	short	<b>feio/a</b>	ugly
<b>magro/a</b>	slim/thin	<b>bonito/a</b>	handsome/pretty
<b>gordo/a</b>	fat		

### Exercise 11

Here are some contrasting types of character. Using your dictionary, can you match the pairs? The first one has been done for you.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <b>tímido/a</b><br><b>otimista</b><br><b>impaciente</b><br><b>inteligente</b><br><b>trabalhador/a</b> | <b>preguiçoso/a</b><br><b>calma</b><br><b>estúpido/a</b><br><b>extrovertido/a</b><br><b>pessimista</b> |
|---|--|

## Telling the time

Study the following sentences:

**Que horas são?**

**São três horas**

**São nove horas**

**São quinze para as cinco<sup>11</sup>**

**É uma hora**

**É meio-dia**

**É meia-noite**

**A que horas?**

**à uma e cinco**

**às três e meia**

What time is it?  
(lit.: What hours are they?)

It's three o'clock

It's nine o'clock

It's a quarter to five

It's one o'clock (**uma** because **hora** is feminine)

It's midday

It's midnight

At what time?

at five past one

at half past three

Expressing minutes past the hour:

**São duas e vinte**

It's twenty *past* two

Expressing minutes to the hour:

**São dez para as cinco**

It's ten *to* five

<sup>11</sup> the expression 'faltam quinze para (as cinco)' can also be used.

The word **horas** is optional (as in English) in these cases:

**às três (horas)**

at three (o'clock)

**às duas (horas) da tarde**

at two (o'clock) in the afternoon

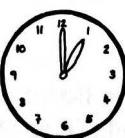
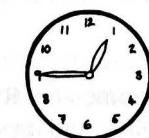
The 24-hour clock can be used, as in the UK, when referring to departure and arrival times of trains and the like:

**O trem (Pt: o comboio) sai às quinze e cinquenta**

The train leaves at 15.50

### Exercise 12

Look at the following clocks. What are these times in Portuguese?



## Other expressions concerning time

**em ponto** (precisely)

**menos um quarto** (Pt)

quarter to

**e um quarto** (Pt)

quarter past

**e meia** half past

You can also add on:

**da manhã**

in the morning

**da tarde**

in the afternoon

**da noite**

in the evening

**às duas horas da tarde**

at two o'clock in the afternoon

You can refer to parts of the day with no mention of time by saying **de manhã, de tarde, de noite**:

**De manhã vou ao escritório**

In the morning I go to the office

## Vocabulary

<b>esta manhã/tarde/noite</b>	this morning/afternoon/evening
<b>Até amanhã!</b>	See you tomorrow!
<b>Até amanhã de manhã!</b>	See you tomorrow morning!
<b>Até logo!</b>	See you later!
<b>Até breve! já!</b>	See you soon!
<b>Até à próxima!</b>	See you next time!
<b>um minuto</b>	a minute
<b>É cedo</b>	It's early
<b>É tarde</b>	It's late

A clock can be: **certo** correct    **atrasado** slow    **adiantado** fast

## Exercise 13

Look at the following list of programmes on **Rede Globo** (Globo Network) for **segunda-feira** (Monday) and answer the following questions in Portuguese:

<b>Globo</b>	
<b>7h00</b>	Bom Dia Brasil
<b>7h30</b>	Bom Dia São Paulo
<b>8h30</b>	TV Colosso – Infantil
<b>12h30</b>	Globo Esporte – informativo
<b>12h45</b>	São Paulo Já
<b>13h15</b>	Jornal Hoje
<b>13h40</b>	Olimpíadas 96
<b>14h10</b>	Despedida de Solteiro
<b>15h45</b>	Filme: Um tira no Jardim de Infância
<b>17h15</b>	Malhação – novela
<b>17h45</b>	Quem É Você – novela
<b>18h40</b>	São Paulo Já
<b>18h55</b>	Vira Lata – novela (estréia)
<b>20h00</b>	Jornal Nacional
<b>20h30</b>	Horário Político: PSC
<b>20h35</b>	Explode Coração – novela
<b>21h40</b>	Tela Quente: Batman, o Retorno
<b>0h00</b>	Intercine: O Último dos Moicanos
<b>2h00</b>	Jornal da Globo
<b>2h35</b>	Filme: Cinderela em Paris

## Vocabulary

<b>os anúncios da televisão</b>	TV advertisements
<b>os programas da televisão</b>	TV programmes
<b>o programa infantil</b>	children's programme
<b>os desenhos animados</b>	cartoons
<b>as notícias</b>	the news
<b>Jornal Nacional</b>	the National News
<b>as Olimpíadas 96</b>	'96 Olympic Games
<b>a novela</b>	the soap opera
<b>a estréia</b>	the première
<b>ao vivo</b>	live

- 1 What time would you switch on if you were a sports fan?
- 2 When should you tune in if you want to watch the première of a soap opera?
- 3 When is the political programme on?
- 4 You are going to be out between **meio-dia** and **cinco e meia**. How many programmes will you miss?

## The verb estar

Portuguese has *two* verbs for 'to be', one of which you already know, **ser**. The other is **estar**. The present indicative tense of **ser** and **estar** is as follows:

<b>ser</b>	<b>estar</b>
<b>sou</b>	<b>estou</b>
<b>és</b>	<b>estás</b>
<b>é</b>	<b>está</b>
<b>somos</b>	<b>estamos</b>
<b>são</b>	<b>estão</b>

How do you decide when to use which verb?

- 1 **O gato é preto**      The cat is black
  - 2 **O gato está doente**      The cat is ill
- 1 Here the verb **ser** is used to denote an unchanging state regarding the colour of the cat – his fur is black, and he will remain black. This is a permanent characteristic.
  - 2 Here the verb **estar** is used because although the cat is ill at present, he will most probably recover and no longer be ill. This is a temporary state.

## Expressing location

- 1 **O banco é na esquina**      The bank is on the corner  
 2 **O cão está no sofá**      The dog is on the sofa

In the first example, **ser** is used because the bank is an unchanging feature on the corner. This is taken to be a permanent state. In the second example, **estar** is used instead of **ser** because the dog is, at the moment, on the sofa. He may, however, decide to jump off half an hour later in order to go for a walk. This state may change at anytime.

### Exercise 14

Can you fill in the correct part of the verbs **ser** or **estar**?

- |   |                              |
|---|------------------------------|
| <b>A janela</b> ——— <b>aberta</b>               | The window is open           |
| <b>O carro</b> ——— <b>azul</b>                  | The car is blue              |
| <b>A menina</b> ——— <b>inglesa</b>              | The girl is English          |
| <b>Ele</b> ——— <b>triste</b>                    | He is sad                    |
| <b>Elas</b> ——— <b>na cozinha</b>               | They are in the kitchen      |
| <b>Curitiba</b> ——— <b>uma cidade no Brasil</b> | Curitiba is a city in Brazil |

### Exercise 15

Read the following passage, answer the questions on it then translate it into English:

**Sou médico e moro num apartamento no Rio de Janeiro.  
 Trabalho num hospital no centro da cidade. Sou bastante alto e moreno. Gosto de computadores. Não gosto de estar doente.**

- How does the speaker describe his looks?
- What does he do for a living and where exactly does he work?
- He does not like computers. True or false?

## How much can you remember?

- 1 How would you say the following in Portuguese?

- I like jazz music; I don't like politics.
- I work in a company in Rio on Wednesdays.
- He is American, quite shy, but an optimist.

### 2 What do you think the following mean?

- |               |               |                 |
|---------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 1 precisa-se  | 2 inteligente | 3 feio          |
| 4 o jornal    | 5 calma       | 6 o apartamento |
| 7 uma revista | 8 baixo       | 9 a praia       |

### 3 How do you form the plurals of these words?

- |            |              |
|------------|--------------|
| 1 a casa   | 2 pessimista |
| 3 o cinema | 4 o pintor   |

### 4 Can you give the the feminine of these?

- |                |            |            |
|----------------|------------|------------|
| 1 o médico     | 2 o senhor | 3 o cantor |
| 4 o jornalista | 5 solteiro | 6 tímido   |

### 5 Can you give the following times in Portuguese?

12.30 p.m.    2.15 p.m.    15.45    9.00 a.m.

and translate:

duas e meia	meia-noite	nove e vinte
uma hora	sete e dez	três horas

# 3 Parabéns!

## Congratulations!

In this lesson you will learn about:

- expressing age, date and place of birth
- family relationships
- using the preterite tense
- using possessive adjectives and pronouns
- asking for a table and ordering food in a restaurant

### Dialogue 1 *De onde você é, Maria?*

A new colleague, Maria, has started work in the same office as Miguel. They start to chat

- MIGUEL: De onde você é, Maria?  
 MARIA: Sou de Teresópolis.  
 MIGUEL: Ah sim! Eu também. Nasci na Serra, nos arredores. Tenho trinta e dois anos.  
 MARIA: Quando é o seu aniversário?  
 MIGUEL: No dia dez de Novembro. E o seu?  
 MARIA: Hoje é o dia dos meus anos!  
 MIGUEL: Então meus parabéns! Quantos anos faz?  
 MARIA: Faço trinta anos.  
 MIGUEL: Where are you from, Maria?  
 MARIA: I'm from Teresópolis.  
 MIGUEL: Ah! So am I. I was born in the Serra, in the suburbs.  
 I'm 32.  
 MARIA: When is your birthday?

- MIGUEL: *The 10th of November. And yours?*  
 MARIA: *It's my birthday today!*  
 MIGUEL: *Well, congratulations! How old are you?*  
 MARIA: *I'm 30.*

### Expressing age

Portuguese does not use the verb ‘to be’ (**ser**) but instead the verbs **ter** (‘to have’) or **fazer** (‘to make/do’) to express age and date of birth:

- Q: **Quantos anos tem?**  
 A: **Tenho 30**  
*lit.*: How many years do you have? I have 30
- Q: **Quantos anos faz?**  
 A: **Faço 30**  
*lit.*: How many years do you make? I make 30

### Vocabulary

<b>Parabéns!</b>	Congratulations/Happy birthday!
<b>o dia de anos</b> (Pt)	birthday ( <i>lit.</i> : the day of years)
<b>o aniversário</b>	birthday/anniversary
<b>o aniversário de casamento</b>	wedding anniversary
<b>Feliz aniversário!</b>	Happy birthday!
<b>no dia dez de Novembro</b>	(on) the 10th of November
<b>aniversariante</b> (m,f)	birthday boy/girl

Sing-along “Happy birthday” in Portuguese: ‘*Parabéns para você/nesta data querida/muitas felicidades/muitos anos de vida*’

Revise the numbers 1–50 in Lesson 2.

### Exercise 1

Listen again to the dialogue (or, if you don’t have the recordings, re-read the dialogue) then try to match the English expression in the left-hand column with its Portuguese equivalent on the right.

- |                          |                                    |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1 Miguel is 32           | <b>É o dia do meu aniversário</b>  |
| 2 How old is Maria?      | <b>Quando é o seu aniversário?</b> |
| 3 When is your birthday? | <b>O Miguel tem 32 anos</b>        |
| 4 It’s my birthday       | <b>Quantos anos tem a Maria?</b>   |

## Names of months



These are very similar to the names of English months:

**Janeiro   Fevereiro   Março   Abril   Maio   Junho   Julho  
Agosto   Setembro   Outubro   Novembro   Dezembro**

### Exercise 2

Here are the details of four people whose ages, birth dates and places of birth all differ. Imagine that you are each person in turn and say in Portuguese: 'I was born in (place)', 'my birthday is on (date)' and 'I am (age)'.

- 1 Ana. Age 13. Born on 6 May in Madeira.
- 2 Robert. Age 24. Born on 14 August in Ireland.
- 3 Pedro. Age 42. Born on 1 March in Spain.
- 4 Maria. Age 36. Born on 29 December in Brazil.

### Exercise 3

Can you translate the following dialogue into English?

- ANTÔNIO: Chamo-me Antônio, e você, como se chama?  
 MANUELA: Chamo-me Manuela. De onde você é?  
 ANTÔNIO: Sou do Recife, e você?  
 MANUELA: Sou de Belém. Tenho dezenove anos. Que idade tem?  
 ANTÔNIO: Tenho vinte e cinco anos.

## Irregular verbs

Here is the present indicative of three common irregular verbs:

<b>ter</b> to have	<b>fazer</b> to do/make	<b>ir</b> to go
<b>tenho</b> I have	<b>faço</b> I do (I make)	<b>vou</b> I go
<b>tens</b> you have	<b>fazes</b> you do	<b>vais</b> you go
<b>tem</b> you have he, she, it has	<b>faz</b> you do he, she, it does	<b>vai</b> you go he, she, it goes
<b>temos</b> we have	<b>fazemos</b> we do	<b>vamos</b> we go
<b>têm</b> they, you have	<b>fazem</b> they, you do	<b>vão</b> they, you go

There is a second verb meaning 'to have' – **haver** – in Portuguese. Whereas **ter** expresses possession, however, **haver** is mainly used in the third person (**há**), meaning (1) there is/are; (2) for; (3) ago:

**Há muitas lojas em Londres**

*There are many shops in London*

**Há quanto tempo está em férias?**

*(for) How long have you been on holiday?*

**O ônibus partiu há dez minutos.**

*The bus left ten minutes ago.*

## Idiomatic uses of ter

As well as expressing age, **ter** is used in a number of idiomatic expressions instead of the verb 'to be':

<b>ter fome</b> <sup>1</sup>	to be hungry	<b>ter sede</b>	to be thirsty
<b>ter cuidado</b>	to be careful	<b>ter vontade de</b>	to be keen to
<b>ter sono</b>	to be sleepy	<b>ter pressa</b>	to be in a hurry
<b>ter frio</b>	to be cold	<b>ter calor</b>	to be warm
<b>ter sorte</b>	to be lucky	<b>ter medo</b>	to be afraid
<b>ter razão</b>	to be right	<b>não ter razão</b>	to be wrong
<b>ter saudades de</b>	to miss, to long for		

<sup>1</sup> In everyday conversation the verb **estar + com** is used to convey a condition or disposition. e.g.: **estou com fome**, I am hungry (*lit.*: I am with hunger).

## Dialogue 2

### A família



Antônio is asking Cristina about her family

- ANTÔNIO: Bom dia, Cristina. Diga-me por favor, quantas pessoas há na sua família?  
 CRISTINA: Há cinco. Os meus pais, a minha irmã, o meu irmão e eu.  
 ANTÔNIO: São todos do Brasil?  
 CRISTINA: Não, eu nasci no Brasil mas os meus irmãos<sup>2</sup> são de Portugal.

- ANTÔNIO: Que idades têm vocês todos?
- CRISTINA: Eu sou a mais velha<sup>3</sup> e tenho vinte e três anos. O meu irmão Zé (José) tem vinte anos e a minha irmã mais nova<sup>4</sup>, a Cámi (Maria do Carmo), tem dezesseis.
- ANTÔNIO: *Hello, Cristina. Tell me please, how many people are there in your family?*
- CRISTINA: *There are five. My parents, my sister, my brother and myself.*
- ANTÔNIO: *Are they all from Brazil?*
- CRISTINA: *No, I was born in Brazil but my brother and sister are from Portugal.*
- ANTÔNIO: *How old are they all?*
- CRISTINA: *I'm the oldest, I'm 23. My brother Zé is 20 and my younger sister, Cámi, is 16.*

<sup>2</sup> **os meus irmãos** my brothers or my brother(s) and sister(s)

<sup>3</sup> **a mais velha** the eldest (f) (**o mais velho** (m))

<sup>4</sup> **mais nova** younger (f) (**mais novo** (m))

#### Exercise 4

Listen again to the dialogue above. If you don't have the recording, re-read the dialogue and answer the questions in English.

- 1 How many people are there in Cristina's family?
- 2 What are the names of her brother and sister?
- 3 How old are her brother and sister?
- 4 Where were they all born?

## Possessive adjectives and pronouns

These possessives reflect ownership of a particular item, e.g. 'your gloves', 'his drink', etc., and agree in gender and number with the noun referred to.

Singular	ms	fs	mpl	fpl
my/mine (+ noun)	<b>o meu</b>	<b>a minha</b>	<b>os meus</b>	<b>as minhas</b>
your(s)	<b>o teu</b>	<b>a tua</b>	<b>os teus</b>	<b>as tuas</b>
his/her(s)/your(s)	<b>o seu</b>	<b>a sua</b>	<b>os seus</b>	<b>as suas</b>

#### Plural

our(s)	<b>o nosso</b>	<b>a nossa</b>	<b>os nossos</b>	<b>as nossas</b>
your(s)	<b>o vosso</b>	<b>a vossa</b>	<b>os vossos</b>	<b>as vossas</b>
their(s) your(s)	<b>o seu</b>	<b>a sua</b>	<b>os seus</b>	<b>as suas</b>

#### Examples

their friend	<b>a sua amiga</b>
her car	<b>o seu carro</b>
his houses	<b>as suas casas</b>
your books	<b>os seus livros</b>

In the example **o seu carro**, confusion may arise as to whose car is being referred to because this can be translated as: 'his car', 'her car', 'their car' or 'your car'. To avoid ambiguity the following alternative for 'him/her/their' can be used:

<b>de + ele/ela</b>	(of him/of her)
<b>de + eles/elas</b>	(of them/(mpl and fpl))
<b>o carro dele</b>	his car
<b>o carro dela</b>	her car
<b>o carro deles</b>	their car
<b>o carro delas</b>	their car

Possessive adjectives are frequently used without the definite article: **onde está minha caneta?**, 'where is my pen?'.

Although the personal pronoun **vós** (you) has all but disappeared from everyday speech, you will see that its equivalent set of possessive adjectives and pronouns are very much in use in Portugal: **o vosso**, **a vossa**, **os vossos**, **as vossas**. These pronouns are used to express the informal 'you' plural.

#### Omission of the article

If the possessive stands on its own, usually at the end of a sentence and is preceded by the verb **ser**, the definite article is dropped:

<b>Este é meu</b>	This is mine (i.e. <b>Este (livro) é meu</b> )
<b>Esta é minha</b>	This is mine (i.e. <b>Esta (carta) é minha</b> )

In cases where ownership requires emphasizing, however, then the article reappears:

**Este é o meu** This is mine (i.e. not yours)

The possessive adjective is omitted when:

1 a relationship is obvious:

**Ela vai a Lisboa com o filho** (not **o seu filho**)

She's going to Lisbon with her son.

2 referring to parts of the body:

**os braços** my arms (not **os meus braços**)

### Exercise 5

Here are some items belonging to two individuals. Try to fill in the correct possessive adjectives:

CRISTINA: **Na minha bolsa há:**

In my handbag I have:

... <b>bolsinha</b> (f)	my purse
... <b>maquiagem<sup>5</sup></b> (f)	my make-up
... <b>óculos</b> (mpl)	my spectacles
... <b>vitaminas</b> (fpl)	my vitamin pills

ANTÔNIO: **Nos meus bolsos há:** In my pockets I have:

... <b>carteira</b> (f)	my wallet
... <b>agenda</b> (f)	my diary
... <b>chaves</b> (fpl)	my keys
... <b>óculos de sol</b> (mpl)	my sunglasses

The important thing to remember with these adjectives is that they agree with the *noun* referred to and not *the person* who is the owner of the keys, wallet, etc.

### Exercise 6

With the help of the vocabulary below, translate the following into English.

JOSÉ: Oi, Teresa. Tem uma família grande ou pequena?

TERESA: Tenho uma família grande: três filhos e uma filha. O

Vasco é o mais velho e a Clara é a mais nova ... as idades variam entre os trinta e os quinze anos.

JOSÉ: O seu marido é aposentado, não é? Você ainda trabalha?

TERESA: Sou dona de casa. Tenho sempre que fazer!

### Vocabulary

<b>grande</b>	big	<b>pequena/o</b>	small
<b>o filho</b>	son	<b>a filha</b>	daughter
<b>o seu marido</b>		<b>your husband</b>	
<b>a esposa</b>		<b>wife</b>	
<b>as idades variam</b>		<b>the ages vary</b>	
<b>o mais velho</b>		<b>the oldest</b>	
<b>a mais nova</b>		<b>the youngest</b>	
<b>entre os trinta e os quinze anos</b>		<b>between 30 and 15 years of age</b>	
<b>ser aposentado (Pt: reformado)</b>		<b>to be retired</b>	
<b>dona de casa</b>		<b>housewife</b>	
<b>tenho sempre que fazer</b>		I always have lots to do	

### More numbers

Memorise the following numbers from 60 to two billion:

	pronounced:
<b>sessenta</b>	60
<b>setenta</b>	70
<b>oitenta</b>	80
<b>noventa</b>	90
<b>cem</b>	100
<b>cento e um/a</b>	101
<b>cento e quinze, etc.</b>	115
<b>cento e setenta</b>	170
<b>duzentos/as</b>	200
<b>trezentos/as</b>	300
<b>quatrocentos/as</b>	400
<b>quinhentos/as</b>	500
<b>seiscentos/as</b>	600
<b>setecentos/as</b>	700
<b>oitocentos/as</b>	800
<b>novecentos/as</b>	900

<sup>5</sup> also **maquilagem** (Pt: **maquilhagem**)

<b>mil</b>	1,000	meel
<b>mil e um/a</b>	1,001	meeleoom/ah
<b>dois mil</b>	2,000	doysmeel
<b>cem mil</b>	100,000	saingmeel
<b>trezentos mil</b>	300,000	trezentoosmeel
<b>um milhão</b>	1 million	oom meelyow
<b>dois milhões</b>	2 million	doys meelyoys
<b>um bilhão</b>	1 billion	oom beelyow
<b>dois bilhões</b>	2 billion	dois beelyoys

Like 1 and 2, the numbers 200 to 900 alter according to whether the thing referred to is masculine or feminine, singular or plural:

<b>um café (m)</b>	a (one) coffee
<b>duas malas (fpl)</b>	two suitcases
<b>setecentos livros</b>	700 books (mpl)
<b>setecentas cadeiras</b>	700 chairs (fpl)

## Dialogue 3

### Onde foram vocês ontem?

Listen to, or read, the following conversation where people talk about what they did yesterday

- MARIA: Onde foram vocês ontem?  
 GRAÇA: Fomos dar um passeio de carro muito agradável pela Serra da Mantiqueira. E vocês?  
 JORGE: Nós passamos o dia na praia. Tomamos banhos de mar e banhos de sol. Foi ótimo!  
 PAULO: Nós também passamos um dia excelente. Gostamos muito da paisagem.

- MARIA: Where did you go yesterday?  
 GRAÇA: We went for a very pleasant trip in the car to the Serra da Mantiqueira (the Mantiqueira Mountains). What did you do?  
 JORGE: We spent the day on the beach. We swam and sunbathed. It was great!  
 PAULO: We also had an excellent day. We loved the scenery.

## The preterite tense

The verbs in the above dialogue are in the preterite tense. You form this from any regular verb by removing the **-ar**, **-er** or **-ir** endings from the infinitive form and replacing them with the following endings:

<i>regular verbs</i>		<i>irregular verbs</i>	
<b>passar</b> ‘to spend’	<b>comer</b> ‘to eat’	<b>partir</b> ‘to leave’	<b>ir + ser</b> <sup>6</sup> ‘to go’ + ‘to be’
<b>passei</b>	<b>comi</b>	<b>parti</b>	<b>fui</b>
<b>passaste</b>	<b>comeste</b>	<b>partiste</b>	<b>foste</b>
<b>passou</b>	<b>comeu</b>	<b>partiu</b>	<b>foi</b>
<b>passamos</b>	<b>comemos</b>	<b>partimos</b>	<b>fomos</b>
<b>passaram</b>	<b>comeram</b>	<b>partiram</b>	<b>foram</b>

<sup>6</sup> The verbs **ir** and **ser** are exactly the same in the preterite tense.

You will see that the irregular verbs on the right do not follow the normal pattern of stem + endings in the case of the three regular verbs. Many irregular verbs in the preterite tense bear little resemblance to the verb in its infinitive form: for example, **querer** ('to want') has these forms in the preterite:

**quis quiseste quis quisemos quisoram**

Commitment to memory is, unfortunately, the only way to remember such verbs!

The preterite tense is used to refer to actions or events that took place in the past and which have an air of finality and completeness about them:

**Ontem foi ao banco** Yesterday he/she/you went to the bank  
 (See personal pronouns, p. 224.)

### Exercise 7

Follow the model given below and change the plural part of the verb in each case into the 1st person singular (**eu**) part of the verb:

**Gostamos muito do jantar** → **Gostei muito do jantar**  
 We really liked the meal → I really liked the meal

<sup>1</sup> **o restaurante onde fomos ontem**  
 the restaurant where we went yesterday

- 2 **Onde foram vocês?**  
Where did you go?
- 3 **Nós passamos o dia na praia**  
We spent the day on the beach
- 4 **Tomamos banhos de sol**  
We sunbathed

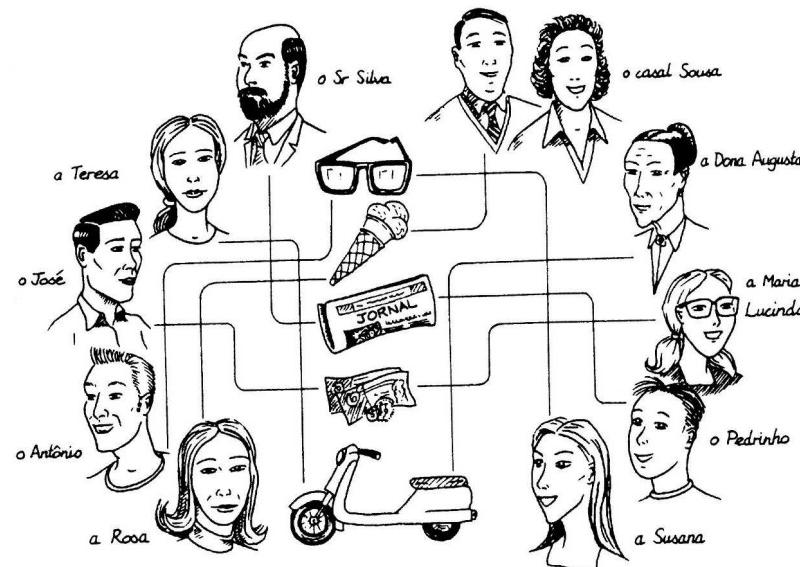
### Exercise 8a

Give the preterite tense of the following: **encontrar** ('to find') **esconder** ('to hide') **decidir** ('to decide')

### Exercise 8b

Look at the following drawing: the people on the left have lost something whilst those on the right have found something. Now try to answer the questions below, replying in the following way:

**Foi** ... (name) It was ...



### Vocabulary

<b>quem</b>	who	<b>achar</b>	to find
<b>perder</b>	to lose	<b>o casal Sousa</b>	the Sousas (the Sousa couple)

**o dinheiro** money      **o sorvete** ice cream

- 1 **Quem perdeu o dinheiro?** (Who lost the money?)
- 2 **Quem achou o jornal?** (Who found the newspaper?)
- 3 **Quem perdeu os óculos?**
- 4 **Quem achou a motoneta?**
- 5 **Quem perdeu o sorvete?**
- 6 **Quem achou o dinheiro?**
- 7 **Quem perdeu a motoneta?**
- 8 **Quem perdeu o jornal?**
- 9 **Quem achou os óculos?**
- 10 **Quem achou o sorvete?**

### Meals

The names of meals (**as refeições**) in Portuguese are as follows:

<b>o café da manhã</b>	breakfast
<b>o almoço</b>	lunch
<b>o jantar</b>	dinner
<b>o lanche</b>	afternoon snack
<b>a ceia</b>	supper

### Dialogue 4

### Que desejam?

- JORGE: Faz favor!  
 O GARÇOM:<sup>7</sup> Que desejam?  
 JORGE: Queríamos<sup>8</sup> uma mesa para três.  
 O GARÇOM: Muito bem. Esta mesa serve?  
 MARIA: Está ótima. Tem o cardápio?  
 O GARÇOM: Aqui tem o cardápio. Já querem pedir o jantar?  
 GRAÇA: Sim. Para mim, a salada mista e uma moqueca de camarão.<sup>9</sup>  
 MARIA: Eu não quero salada. Queria só a peixada.<sup>10</sup> Não estou com muita fome.  
 JORGE: Uma canja,<sup>11</sup> as costeletas com purê de batatas e uma cerveja bem gelada. Estou morrendo de fome e com muita sede!

*Later on, the dinner finished, Jorge calls the waiter:*

- JORGE: Queria a conta por favor.  
 O GARÇOM: Aqui está . . . o total é quinze reais<sup>12</sup> (R\$15,00).  
 JORGE: Aqui tem vinte reais. Dê-me dois reais e cinquenta centavos (R\$2,50) e pode guardar o troco.<sup>13</sup>
- JORGE: *Excuse me!*  
 WAITER: *Can I help you?*  
 JORGE: *We'd like a table for three.*  
 WAITER: *That's fine. Will this table do?*  
 MARIA: *This is great. Do you have the menu?*  
 WAITER: *Here it is. Are you ready to order?*  
 GRAÇA: *Yes. I'll have mixed salad and moqueca de camarão.*  
 MARIA: *I don't want salad, I just want the fish stew. I'm not very hungry.*  
 JORGE: *Chicken soup, pork chops with mashed potatoes and a glass of really cold beer. I'm starving and really thirsty!*

*Later . . .*

- JORGE: *I'd like the bill please.*  
 WAITER: *Here it is . . . the total is fifteen reais (R\$15,00).*  
 JORGE: *Here's twenty. Give me two and a half reais and you can keep the change.*

7 **o garçom** waiter

8 **queríamos . . .** 'we would like . . .'

9 **moqueca de camarão** shrimp stew with coconut milk

10 **peixada** fish stew with vegetables and eggs

11 **canja** chicken soup

12 **o real** (R\$) the Brazilian unit of currency (100 centavos = um real)

13 **o troco** change

Note: where a comma is used in English in four-figure numbers (e.g. 1,450, 10,450), a full stop is used in Portuguese (e.g. 1.450, 10.450).

### Exercise 9

Below is a menu (**o cardápio** or **o menu**) similar to the one that the three friends above chose from. In Portuguese, call the waiter over, ask for a table for one and then order the items listed and later ask for the bill. You should be able to find all the expressions you need in the preceding dialogue.

#### Restaurante Sol

<i>Entradas</i>
salada mista
canja
*
<i>Peixe</i>
moqueca de camarão
peixada
*
<i>Carne</i>
costeletas de porco
xinxim de galinha <sup>14</sup>
*
<i>Sobremesa</i>
pudim de leite
mousse de chocolate
fruta

- You: *(Excuse me!)*  
 O GARÇOM: **Bom dia. Que deseja?**  
 You: *(A table for one.)*  
 O GARÇOM: **Esta mesa serve?**  
 You: *(This is great. Can I see the menu please?)*  
 O GARÇOM: **Aqui tem o cardápio. Deseja pedir?**  
 You: *(Yes please. I'd like the mixed salad, shrimp moqueca and a bottle of white wine.)*  
 You: *(Can I have the bill please?)*

14 **xinxim de galinha** chicken cooked with shrimps and dendê oil.

**Vocabulary**

<b>entradas</b>	starters
<b>peixe</b>	fish
<b>carne</b>	meat
<b>sobremesa</b>	dessert
<b>uma garrafa de canja</b>	a bottle of chicken soup
<b>vinho branco</b>	white wine
<b>costeletas de porco</b>	pork chops
<b>vinho tinto</b>	red wine
<b>pudim de leite</b>	milk pudding
<b>fruta</b>	fruit
<b>mousse de chocolate</b>	chocolate mousse

**Asking questions****Q: Como é o Museu Nacional?**

What's the National Museum like?

**A: O Museu Nacional é excelente.**

The National Museum is excellent.

In the above question the normal order of subject and verb changes because a question word (**como, onde**) is at the start of the sentence. This also happens in English.

Where there is no question word, there is no need to invert the order of subject and verb; it is enough to assume a questioning tone of voice. The word order remains the same for both the statement and the question:

**Q: Está muito doente?**

Is he very ill? (question)

**A: Está muito doente**

He is very ill

The most common interrogatives and relatives are as follows:

*interrogatives* (question words) *relatives* (joining words)

<b>que?</b>	what, which?	<b>quem</b>	who
<b>(o) que?</b>	what?	<b>que</b>	that, which, who(m)
<b>quem?</b>	who?	<b>o que</b>	what, that, which
<b>de quem?</b>	whose?	<b>quando</b>	when

<b>quando?</b>	when?	<b>onde</b>	where
<b>onde?</b>	where?	<b>donde</b>	from where
<b>aonde?</b>	to where?	<b>porque</b>	because, why
<b>por que?<sup>15</sup></b>	why?	<b>como</b>	as, since
<b>como?</b>	how?	<b>cujo/a/os/as</b>	of which, whose
<b>quanto/a/os/as</b>	how much?	<b>quanto/a/os/as</b>	how much

**Examples****Quem vai ao Brasil?**

Who is going to Brazil?

**Por que você não come?**

Why aren't you eating?

**Qual é a loja?**

Which shop is it?

**Que acha da peça?**

What do you think of the play?

**Ela sabe quem é**

She knows who it is

**Ele trabalha lá porque pagam bem**

He works there because they pay well

**Temos um tio cujo país favorito é a Espanha**

We have an uncle whose favourite country is Spain

**O café que gostamos vai fechar**

The café we like is going to close down

**Exercise 10**

Read the following passage and answer the questions which follow:

**Uma ótima refeição**

Primeiro, uma canja; depois um prato de peixe cozido com batatas e, em seguida, outro de carne assada com arroz e uma salada de alface com tomate. Para a sobremesa, há fruta: laranjas, maçãs, uvas.

<sup>15</sup> **por que?** at the beginning of the sentence; **porquê, quê, o quê:** when alone or ending a sentence

## Vocabulary

<b>a canja</b>	chicken soup	<b>um prato de carne assada</b>	a plate of roast beef
<b>peixe cozido</b>	boiled fish	<b>para sobremesa</b>	for dessert
<b>com arroz</b>	with rice		
<b>salada de alface e tomate</b>	lettuce and tomato salad		
<b>laranjas, maçãs, uvas</b>	oranges, apples, grapes		

- 1 What does the first course consist of?
- 2 There is meat and fish on the menu. Which comes with potatoes and which is served with rice?
- 3 What does the salad consist of?
- 4 For dessert there are pears and chocolate mousse. True or false?

## How much can you remember?

- 1 Translate into Portuguese:

- 1 How old are you? (There are two ways of asking this)
- 2 When is your birthday?
- 3 I'm in a hurry
- 4 I was born in London
- 5 My brother is 16. His girlfriend is 15
- 6 His keys and wallet
- 7 I'd like a table for two and the menu please

- 2 Can you fill in the blanks?

- |                                  |                           |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 <b>Estou ... de fome</b>       | I'm starving              |
| 2 <b>A ... irmã ...-se Clara</b> | My sister's name is Clara |
| 3 <b>Não ... razão</b>           | He is wrong               |
| 4 <b>Onde ... ?</b>              | Where were you born?      |

- 3 Translate into Portuguese:

- |                   |               |
|-------------------|---------------|
| 1 my brothers     | 4 my purse    |
| 2 his car         | 5 their books |
| 3 your sunglasses | 6 your pen    |

- 4 Name four months of the year in Portuguese

- 5 How do you say the following numbers in Portuguese:

66, 73, 101, 23, 7, 87, 2000, 207, 8, 90, 45, 679, 10, 1, 36

- 6 True or false?

<b>o jantar</b>	= breakfast	<b>a ceia</b>	= lunch
<b>o café da manhã</b>	= supper	<b>o almoço</b>	= dinner

- 7 Translate the following:

Nasci em Londres. Tenho vinte e dois anos. O meu aniversário é no dia quinze de Maio. Quantos anos faz o Paulo? Ele faz quarenta anos. O seu aniversário é no dia primeiro de Dezembro.

- 8 Read the following dialogue and answer the questions which follow:

JOSÉ:	Olá, Paulo! Você está bom?
PAULO:	Bem, obrigado. E você?
JOSÉ:	Estou ótimo! Apresento-lhe o meu vizinho e amigo, o Sr Mendes.
PAULO:	Como vai? Sente-se, por favor. Quer vinho ou cerveja?
SR MENDES:	Uma cerveja, por favor. Há um telefone aqui perto? Queria falar com a minha mulher. <sup>16</sup>

<b>você está bom?</b>	how are you?	<b>sente-se</b>	sit down
<b>o meu vizinho</b>	my neighbour	<b>quer ...?</b>	do you want ...?
<b>apresento-lhe</b>	may I introduce ...	<b>amigo</b>	friend
<b>aqui perto</b>	near here (in the vicinity)		

- 1 Who does José introduce?
- 2 What does Paulo invite Sr Mendes to do?
- 3 What does he then suggest?
- 4 What drink does Sr Mendes choose?
- 5 What does Sr Mendes want to do?

16 also, **a esposa** wife

# 4 Desculpe!

## Excuse me!

In this lesson you will learn about:

- finding your way about
- getting a room in an hotel
- choosing the correct way of saying 'you'
- expressing future plans
- using the imperative

### Dialogue 1 *Podia me dizer . . .?*

José is in São Paulo, Brazil, to give a performance of fado<sup>1</sup> singing at the municipal theatre. But first, he has to find his way there

JOSÉ: Faz favor, podia me dizer onde é o teatro municipal?

MARGARIDA: Não sei, não conheço muito bem esta área . . . ah! é ali em frente, à direita.

JOSÉ: Como? Pode falar mais devagar por favor?

MARGARIDA: Você siga<sup>2</sup> sempre em frente e depois vire<sup>3</sup> à direita. É em frente de um<sup>4</sup> parque, junto de uma pequena praça.

JOSÉ: Obrigado.

MARGARIDA: De nada.

JOSÉ: Excuse me, could you tell me where the municipal theatre is?

MARGARIDA: I don't know, I don't know this area very well . . . ah! it's there, opposite, on the right.

JOSÉ: Sorry? (Pardon?) Can you speak more slowly please?

MARGARIDA: Continue straight ahead and then turn to the right. It's opposite a park, beside a small square.

JOSÉ: Thanks.

MARGARIDA: No problem (It's a pleasure/not at all).

1 **o fado** a type of melancholy Portuguese folk music

2 **siga** ('follow') is the imperative form of **seguir**

3 **vire** ('turn') is the imperative form of **virar**

4 **de um, de uma**: in Portugal you are more likely to hear **de** contracting with an article than in Brazil (**dum, duma**)

### Dialogue 2 *Desculpe*

Antônio is in Lisbon and wants to find a room for the night in **uma pensão** (a guest house)

ANTÔNIO: Desculpe. Há uma pensão aqui perto?

ANA: Não, não há. Mas há um hotel ali na Avenida da Liberdade.

ANTÔNIO: Obrigado. Onde é?

ANA: Olhe<sup>5</sup> é logo ali, à esquerda, na esquina, antes da banca de jornais. Mas primeiro, o senhor tem de<sup>6</sup> atravessar a rua.

ANTÔNIO: Muito obrigado. Boa tarde.

ANA: Não tem de quê.<sup>7</sup>

ANTÔNIO: Excuse me. Is there a guest house near here?

ANA: No there isn't. But there is a hotel over there in the Avenida da Liberdade (Avenue of Liberty).

ANTÔNIO: Thanks, where is it?

ANA: Look, it's right there, on the left, on the corner before the newspaper stand. But first you'll have to cross the road.

ANTÔNIO: Thanks very much. Good afternoon.

ANA: That's OK.

5 **Olhe** ('Look!') is the imperative form of **olhar**

6 **tem de** (or **tem que**) is a combination of **ter** + **de/que** and is followed by the infinitive; it means 'to have to, must'

7 also: **não há de quê**

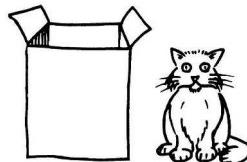
**Exercise 1**

Answer the following in relation to the two dialogues:

- 1 What two ways are there of getting attention?
- 2 If you can't understand or follow what someone says, what word do you use to convey this?
- 3 How do you say: 'I don't know'?
- 4 Find the words for 'here' and 'there'. Look in your dictionary for other ways to say these words.
- 5 How do you say 'no problem'.

**Compound prepositions**

- Q: Onde está o gato?** Where is the cat?  
**A: Está (ao lado) da caixa** He is (beside) the box.  
 (de + a = da)



<b>longe de</b>	far from
<b>atrás de</b>	behind
<b>em cima de</b>	on top of
<b>junto de/junto a</b>	next to
<b>em</b>	in/on
<b>dentro de</b>	inside
<b>ao lado de</b>	beside
<b>fora de</b>	outside of
<b>em frente de</b>	in front of/opposite
<b>perto de</b>	near
<b>debaixo de</b>	underneath/below
<b>à esquerda de</b>	on the left of
<b>à direita de</b>	on the right of

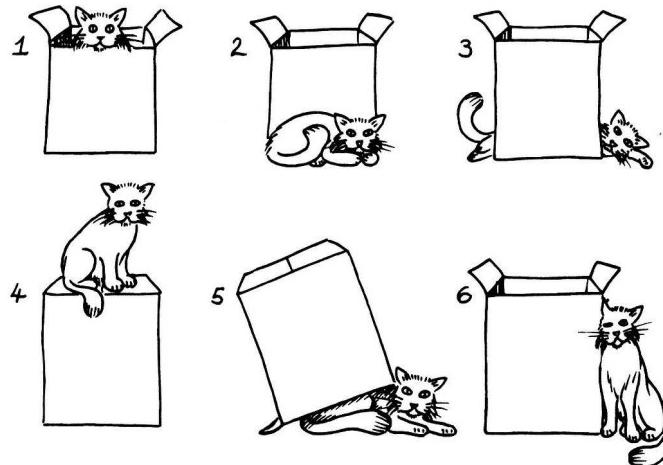
As normal, the prepositions **de** and **a** contract with the definite article. For example:

<b>em frente da janela</b> (f)	in front of the window
<b>perto dos edifícios</b> (mpl)	near the buildings
<b>junto à loja</b> (f)	next to the shop

**Exercise 2**

Can you say in Portuguese which position **o gato** is in?

**O gato está (debaixo da caixa), etc.**

**Exercise 3**

Give the opposites of:

**longe de, em cima de, atrás de, dentro de**

**Getting someone's attention**

The following terms are used in different situations:

**Faz favor!** Please/Excuse me!  
 (When you just want to attract someone's attention)

**Desculpe!** Excuse me!  
 (If you have either to interrupt to get someone's attention or to make your request even more polite)

**Com licença!** Excuse me!

(When you have to ask someone to move out of the way, or to interrupt in order to attract someone's attention)

## The imperative

In the case of regular verbs the imperative is formed as follows:

-ar verbs -er verbs -ir verbs

- |                   |                 |                  |  |
|-------------------|-----------------|------------------|--|
| 1 <b>fala!</b>    | <b>bebe!</b>    | <b>parte!</b>    | <b>tu</b>  |
| 2 <b>fale!</b>    | <b>beba!</b>    | <b>parta!</b>    | <b>você/o senhor/a senhora</b>   |
| 3 <b>falem!</b>   | <b>bebam!</b>   | <b>partam!</b>   | <b>vocês/os senhores/as senhoras/</b><br>(to more than one person addressed as <b>tu</b> ) |
| 4 <b>falemos!</b> | <b>bebamos!</b> | <b>partamos!</b> | 'Let us speak/drink/leave!'  |

## The verbs conhecer and saber

The present indicative of these two verbs is as follows:

**Saber** ('to know' facts)

**sei** **sabes** **sabe** **sabemos** **sabem**

**Você sabe quantas pessoas estão aqui?**

Do you know how many people are here?

**Conhecer** ('to know' places, people, about a subject)

**conheço** **conheces** **conhece** **conhecemos** **conhecem**

**Ele conhece a Joana**

He knows Joana

## Forms of address for 'you'

Unlike English, which simply has one way of expressing 'you' – regardless of who is addressed, be it child, friend, adult or pet dog – Portuguese has the following forms which you use according to the type of person you are addressing:

*Use for*

You **tu** (pl **vocês**) very close relationships

You **você(s)** informal 'you' between friends and people of the same age. In Brazil, used widely

You **o senhor**  
**os senhores**  
**a senhora**  
**as senhoras** polite, formal 'you'. Also used along with titles, **doutor**, etc.: **o senhor doutor quer café?** and any professional person

Other forms of address:

*English style*      *Brazilian style*

Mrs, Ms, Miss  
(mature age)

Mr      **Senhor** + either given name or surname  
**Seu** + given name

Miss      **Moça** or **Senhorita** (or simply use given name)  
**Menina** (Pt)

## Exercise 4

Read the following then answer the questions which follow.

ANA: Boa tarde. Faz favor, pode me dizer onde é o Jardim América?<sup>8</sup>

JORGE: Veja bem. A senhora siga sempre em frente. Fique<sup>9</sup> neste<sup>10</sup> lado<sup>11</sup> da rua. No fim<sup>12</sup> desta<sup>13</sup> praça<sup>14</sup> vire à direita e imediatamente à sua esquerda encontra<sup>15</sup> uma rua descendo<sup>16</sup> diretamente para o Jardim América.

8 **o Jardim América** is an elegant district south-west of São Paulo's city centre  
9 **fique** is the imperative of **ficar** ('to stay/remain'); it is used as well as **ser** to signify position

10 **neste** derives from **em + este** ('on + this')

11 **o lado** 'side'

12 **no fim de** 'at the end of'

13 **desta** derives from **de + esta** ('of + this')

14 **praça** 'square'

15 **encontra** is from **encontrar** ('to find')

16 **descendo** 'going down'

- 1 What does Ana ask first?
- 2 Ana interprets Jorge's directions as: 'Cross the road. At the end of the square turn to the left and immediately on your right you will find a road going directly down into the Jardim América district.' Is she completely right?

## Contractions

The demonstrative **este**, etc., contracts with **em** with the following results:

<b>em + este</b>	→ <b>neste</b>	in/on this
<b>em + esta</b>	→ <b>nesta</b>	
<b>em + estes</b>	→ <b>nestes</b>	in/on these
<b>em + estas</b>	→ <b>nestas</b>	

**Este**, etc., also contracts with **de** with these results:

<b>de + este</b>	→ <b>deste</b>	of/from this
<b>de + esta</b>	→ <b>desta</b>	
<b>de + estes</b>	→ <b>destes</b>	of/from these
<b>de + estas</b>	→ <b>destas</b>	

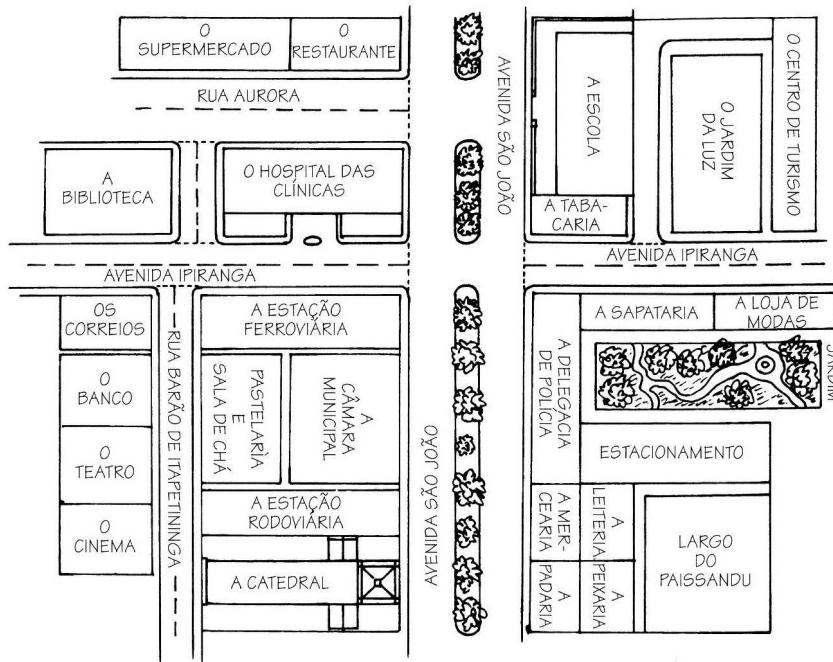
## Exercise 5

**A** Look at the city plan on page 71. Can you give directions to someone who wants to go:

- 1 from the railway station to the shoe-shop
- 2 from the school to Largo do Paissandu
- 3 from the cinema to the hospital
- 4 from the car park to the supermarket
- 5 from the bus station to the Post Office

## Vocabulary

<b>a sapataria</b>	shoe-shop
<b>o cinema</b>	cinema
<b>a estação ferroviária</b>	railway station
<b>a estação de caminho de ferro</b> (Pt)	railway station



**a escola**

school

**o estacionamento**

car park

**a estação rodoviária**

bus station

**os correios, o correio**

post office

**o supermercado**

supermarket

**a biblioteca**

library

**o banco**

bank

**o Jardim da Luz**

Luz (light) park

**a mercearia**

grocer's (shop)

**a padaria**

baker's (shop)

**a loja de modas**

dress shop

**B** Can you say where places are located? For example:

**Onde é o supermercado?**

Where is the supermarket?

**É em frente da biblioteca**

It's opposite the library

**1 Onde é o cinema?**

(It's next to the theatre)

- 2 **Onde é o estacionamento?**  
(It's behind the police station)
- 3 **Onde é a pastelaria?**<sup>17</sup>  
(It's opposite the bank)

**C** Use **perto de** to answer the following:

- 1 **Onde é a biblioteca?**    (**É perto do/da ...**)
- 2 **Onde é a catedral?**
- 3 **Onde é o Jardim da Luz?**

**D** Use **ao lado de** to answer these questions:

- 1 **Onde é o teatro?**
- 2 **Onde é a escola?**
- 3 **Onde é a padaria?**

## The future tense using **ir + infinitive**

The use of **ir + infinitive** expresses intention to do something in the future. The 'true' future tense (e.g. 'I shall write', 'he will visit') will be dealt with later.

### **Vou fazer o jantar**

I am going to cook dinner

### **Vai trabalhar esta noite**

He is going to work tonight

### **Vou ver um filme no cinema**

I am going to go see a film at the cinema

The present indicative also expresses the immediate future:

### **Telefono esta noite**

I'll telephone tonight

<sup>17</sup> **a pastelaria** a snack bar which specializes in a typical Brazilian savoury called **a pastel**

## Dialogue 3

### **Vou visitar Recife a negócios**



*Sr Silva is a Portuguese businessman visiting Brazil. He goes to a travel agency (*uma agência de viagens*) in Rio regarding his business trip (*uma viagem de negócios*) to Recife.*

**SR SILVA:** Boa tarde. Vou visitar Recife a negócios. Preciso dum quarto simples com banheiro. Vou viajar de avião, claro.

**O AGENTE:** Deseja um hotel de cinco ou de três estrelas?

**SR SILVA:** De três e só com café da manhã.<sup>18</sup>

**O AGENTE:** E quanto tempo vai ficar em Recife?

**SR SILVA:** Vou ficar uma semana.

**O AGENTE:** Bom. Vou fazer as reservas. Dê-me<sup>19</sup> o seu nome e número de telefone, por favor.

**SR SILVA:** *Hello. I'm going to visit Recife on business. I need a single room with bathroom. I'll be travelling by plane naturally.*

**AGENT:** *Would you like a three star or five star hotel?*

**SR SILVA:** *Three star, and with breakfast only.*

**AGENT:** *And how long are you going to stay in Recife?*

**SR SILVA:** *I'll be staying for a week.*

**AGENT:** *Fine. I'll make the reservations. Give me your name and telephone number please.*

<sup>18</sup> **o café da manhã** 'breakfast' (Pt **o pequeno almoço**)

<sup>19</sup> **dê-me** 'give me'

## Exercise 6

Now it's your turn to say in Portuguese:

We are going to Belo Horizonte and need a room with a bathroom. We are going to stay for two days. We would like (**queríamos**) a five star hotel.

## Exercise 7

Can you put these words in order to make a correct sentence:

viajar de vou semana e uma ficar vou avião

## Dialogue 4

### *Posso ajudá-lo?*

Sr Silva manages to arrive in Recife but minus a few items. He goes to the police station (*a delegacia*)<sup>20</sup> to report to the Lost Property department (*os perdidos e achados*)

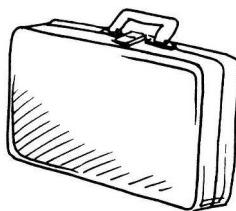
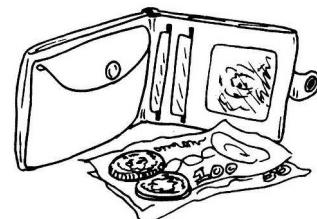
O POLICIAL: Posso ajudá-lo? (*Can I help you?*)

Sr SILVA: Ah, meu Deus! Perdi o meu passaporte. Ah! Nossa Senhora! Não consigo encontrar os meus cheques de viagem nem os meus cartões de crédito. O que vou fazer? Procurei por toda a parte . . . Felizmente, ainda tenho a minha carteira com algum dinheiro e a minha pasta. Mas, onde está a minha pasta? Não acredito! Perdi a minha pasta também!

20 a esquadra (Pt) 'Police Station'

#### Exercise 8

Here is the English translation of Sr Silva's dialogue. Some words have been substituted by a drawing. Can you guess what the missing words are? Write them down in English and Portuguese.



My God! I've lost my \_\_\_\_\_. Heavens! I can't find my \_\_\_\_\_ nor my \_\_\_\_\_. What am I going to do? I've looked everywhere . . . Fortunately, I still have my \_\_\_\_\_ with some money and my \_\_\_\_\_. But, where is my \_\_\_\_\_? I don't believe it! I've lost my \_\_\_\_\_ as well!

#### Exercise 9

Listen again to the dialogue if you have the recordings. If not, cover over the English and answer the following in Portuguese.

- 1 What items has Sr Silva lost?  
(Answer in full: 'He has lost . . .')
- 2 What items does he think he still has?
- 3 What else has he lost?

## Dialogue 5

### *Tem quartos vagos?*

Sr Silva proceeds to his hotel but on arrival discovers that his room has not in fact been booked (*reservado*) and he has to reserve a room (*reservar um quarto*) himself

Sr SILVA: Tem quartos vagos? Queria um quarto simples por favor.

A RECEPCIONISTA: Para quantos dias? Uma semana? E o senhor quer que tipo de quarto? Com chuveiro?<sup>21</sup>

Sr SILVA: Prefiro com banheira. Qual é o preço?

A RECEPCIONISTA: Um quarto simples com banheiro e o café da manhã incluído são vinte reais. Faz favor de assinar aqui. E o seu passaporte?

Sr SILVA: Perdi o meu passaporte. Tenho que ir amanhã de manhã à embaixada . . .

A RECEPCIONISTA: Oh, coitado do senhor! Aqui tem a chave, é o número dezenove. Boa noite, até amanhã.

Sr SILVA: Do you have any vacancies? I'd like a single room please.

RECEPTIONIST: How long for? A week? And what kind of room would you like? With a shower?

Sr SILVA: I'd prefer a bath. How much is it?

- RECEPTIONIST: *A single room with bathroom and breakfast comes to 20 reais. Please sign here. And your passport?*
- SR SILVA: *I lost my passport. I have to go to the embassy tomorrow morning ...*
- RECEPTIONIST: *What a shame! Here's the key, it's number 19. Good night, see you tomorrow.*

21 also **a ducha** 'shower', which has more water pressure than **o chuveiro**

### **Exercise 10**

Now it is your turn to ask for different types of rooms for varying periods of time. Begin your sentences with

**Queria ...** ('I'd like ...').

- 1 I'd like a double room with shower, TV and telephone for one week.
- 2 I'd like a single room with bath, shower and telephone for a fortnight.
- 3 I'd like a twin-bedded room with radio and TV for two nights.

### **Vocabulary**

<b>um quarto simples</b>	a single room
<b>um quarto para pessoa só</b>	
<b>um quarto individual</b>	
<b>um quarto de casal /</b>	
<b>um quarto duplo</b>	a double room
<b>um quarto de casal com duas camas</b>	a twin-bedded room
<b>com/sem ...</b>	with/without ...
<b>banheira</b>	bath
<b>chuveiro, ducha</b>	shower
<b>banheiro privativo</b>	private bathroom
<b>a pensão completa<sup>22</sup></b>	full board
<b>a meia pensão<sup>23</sup></b>	half board
<b>o ar condicionado</b>	air conditioning
<b>a televisão<sup>24</sup></b>	TV
<b>o rádio</b>	radio

<b>oh, coitado ... /que azar!</b>	that's unfortunate
<b>vista para o mar</b>	sea view
<b>para quantos dias?</b>	for how long?
<b>a partir de ... até ...</b>	from ... until ...
<b>para uma noite</b>	for a night
<b>para uma semana</b>	for a week
<b>para um mês</b>	for a month
<b>para quinze dias</b>	for a fortnight
<b>o fim de semana</b>	the weekend
<b>Há/Tem ...?</b>	Do you have ...?
<b>um estacionamento</b>	a car park
<b>um elevador</b>	a lift

22 only available for package tours

23 most hotels in Brazil include breakfast in the daily rate; lunch and dinner are paid separately

24 **o televisor** 'television set'

### **Exercise 11**

Some people at a hotel find their rooms have certain items missing. Can you ask for them in Portuguese?

**Desculpe, mas não há ...**

Excuse me, but there is/there are no ...

- 1 Excuse me, but there are no towels/there is no light.
- 2 Excuse me, but there is no telephone/toilet paper.
- 3 Excuse me, but there is no television set.

**toalhas** (fpl)      **luz** (fs)      **papel higiênico** (ms)

### **Exercise 12**

Some people at a hotel discover that certain things are not working properly. With the help of the following expressions, can you explain in Portuguese to the hotel manager what the problem is:

**Desculpe, no meu quarto (the ...) não funciona**

Excuse me, in my room (the ...) isn't working/is out of order

or use:

**Desculpe, no meu quarto (the ...) está pifado/a**

Excuse me, in my room (the ...) is out of order/is broken (down)

- 1 The blind isn't working/the TV is broken.
- 2 The telephone is broken/the radio is broken/the shower isn't working.
- 3 The toilet isn't working/the light isn't working.

**o toalete** toilet      **o telefone** phone      **a persiana** blind  
**o televisor** TV      **o rádio** radio

## How much can you remember?

### 1 How do you say:

- 1 I'd like to reserve a double room with breakfast included for six nights.
- 2 Give me your phone number. Not at all.
- 3 I've lost my wallet, keys, passport and credit cards.
- 4 They reserved a twin-bedded room with shower.

### 2 True or false?

<b>sem banheira</b>	= with shower
<b>um quarto de casal</b>	= a single room
<b>vire à direita</b>	= continue straight on
<b>no fim desta rua</b>	= behind this park

### 3 Match up the correct English verb to its Portuguese partner then give the first person singular preterite tense of each.

to reserve	<b>confirmar (eu confirmei)</b>
to cross	<b>virar</b>
to follow	<b>subir</b>
to turn	<b>atravessar</b>
to go up	<b>seguir</b>
to confirm	<b>reservar</b>

### 4 Can you remember how to say (using **ir** + infinitive):

- 1 They are going to cross the road
- 2 I am going to reserve a room
- 3 She is going to turn to the left

### 5 How would you translate:

Can you tell me how to get to the bank/post office/railway station/library/bus station?

### 6 Give two ways in Portuguese to get someone's attention

### 7 Can you remember how to say in Portuguese:

underneath, behind, on top of, next to, far from, beside, near to, to the right of, at the side of

### 8 Do you know what the following questions mean?

- 1 **Há um hotel aqui perto?**
- 2 **Pode me dizer onde fica o teatro?**
- 3 **Onde é o minimercado?**
- 4 **Onde ficam os correios?**

### 9 True or false?

<b>felizmente</b>	= unfortunately
<b>encontrar</b>	= to lose
<b>avião</b>	= car
<b>reservar</b>	= to find
<b>que azar!</b>	= That's fine!
<b>quinze dias</b>	= two months

### 10 Name five things you might find in a hotel room

### 11 Read the following dialogue and answer the questions in English

MANUEL: Faz favor! Podia me dizer onde é o Hotel Continental?

O POLICIAL: Com certeza. O senhor atravesse esta avenida, siga por aquela rua ali em frente, no fim da rua vire à sua esquerda e vê o hotel muito perto à sua direita. Mas, o Hotel Marisol é ainda mais perto, deste lado da avenida.

MANUEL: Muito obrigado. O Hotel Marisol será mais caro?

O POLICIAL: Não. Não é. O preço é o mesmo, mais ou menos.

**Vocabulary**

<b>com certeza</b>	of course
<b>aquela rua ali em frente</b>	that road there in front
<b>vê</b>	you will see
<b>muito perto</b>	very close by
<b>ainda mais perto</b>	even closer
<b>será mais caro?</b>	will it be more expensive?
<b>o preço é o mesmo</b>	the price is the same
<b>mais ou menos</b>	more or less
<b>o policial (Pt o polícia)</b>	policeman

- 1 What is Manuel looking for?
- 2 What directions is he given and by whom?
- 3 What alternative is suggested?
- 4 What is Manuel concerned about in his last question?

# 5 Posso ver . . . ?

## Can I see . . . ?

In this lesson you will learn about:

- comparing things
- how to select, request and pay for things
- demonstratives
- sizes, quantities, weights and colours

Listen to or read the following dialogues where Helena is in a shoe-shop (**uma sapataria**) in Campo Grande in Brazil looking for just the right pair of shoes (**os sapatos**) and Clara visits Barra Shopping Centre in Rio in search of a dress (**um vestido**).

### Dialogue 1

#### *Queria comprar . . .*



- HELENA: Boa tarde. Queria comprar um par de sapatos marrons. Vi uns na vitrina<sup>1</sup> . . .
- A VENDEDORA: Aqueles ali?
- HELENA: Não, esses aí entre as sandálias vermelhas e as botas pretas.
- A VENDEDORA: Que número calça?
- HELENA: Calço trinta e seis.
- A VENDEDORA: Quer experimentar? Ah, ficam-lhe bem!
- HELENA: Estes são bonitos mas estão um pouco grandes. Preciso de um tamanho abaixo . . . ah, estes servem bem. Fico com eles. Posso pagar com cartão de crédito?

- HELENA: I'd like to buy a pair of brown shoes. I saw some in the window.  
 SALESLADY: Those ones there?  
 HELENA: No, those ones there between the red sandals and the black boots.  
 SALESLADY: What size do you take?  
 HELENA: I take a 36.  
 SALESLADY: Do you want to try them on? Ah, they really suit you.  
 HELENA: These are nice but they are a bit big. I need a smaller size ... ah, these will do nicely. I'll take them. Can I pay by credit card?

1 a montra (Pt) 'window'

### Vocabulary

<b>Quanto custa/custum?</b>	How much is it/are they?
<b>Que número calça?</b>	What (shoe-) size do you take?
<b>usar/levar</b>	to wear (clothes)
<b>usar/calçar</b>	to wear (shoes)
<b>o número/ a medida/ o tamanho</b>	size
<b>um tamanho abaixo</b>	a smaller size
<b>um tamanho acima</b>	a larger size
<b>pagar com cartão de crédito</b>	to pay by credit card

## The verbs ver and poder

### Ver ('to see')

*Present indicative tense*  
**vejo vês vê vemos vêem** I see, you see, etc.

*Preterite tense*  
**vi viste viu vimos viram** I saw, you saw, etc.

### Poder ('to be able/can')

*Present indicative tense*

**posso podes pode podemos podem** I can, you can, etc.

*Preterite tense*

**pude pudeste pôde pudemos puderam** I could, you could, etc.

### Exercise 1

Here are some signs you might see in various shops. Can you decipher what they mean with the help of the list in English below?

<b>saldos!/liquidação!</b>	<b>preços baixos</b>	<b>caixa</b>
<b>aberto</b>	<b>saída</b>	<b>entrada livre</b>
<b>FECHADO</b>	<b>ICM<sup>2</sup> incluído</b>	

exit	low prices	VAT included
sale!	come in and browse	closed
cash desk	open	

2 **IVA** (Pt) 'VAT'

### Dialogue 2

••

### ***Posso ver alguns vestidos?***

- CLARA: Posso ver alguns vestidos por favor? Ah não, não gosto nada destes vestidos!
- A VENDEDORA: Aqui tem outros mais modernos e noutras cores, verde, amarelo, azul ...
- CLARA: Ai, não sei ... Ah sim, gosto mais destes vestidos. Prefiro o amarelo. Posso prová-lo?
- A VENDEDORA: Com certeza. Qual é o tamanho da senhora? O número 38? Bem, aqui é a cabine de provas. Acho que é uma graça e o preço é só quinze reais? É mesmo uma pechincha! Pago com cheque, está bem? Onde fica a caixa por favor?
- CLARA: Can I see some dresses please? Oh no, I don't like these at all.

- SALESLADY: We have other more modern ones here and in other colours, green, yellow, blue ...  
 CLARA: I don't know! Oh yes, I like these dresses much more. I prefer the yellow one. Can I try it on?  
 SALESLADY: Yes of course. What size are you? 38? Here is the fitting room.  
 CLARA: I think it's really nice and the price is only 15 reais? It's a real bargain! I'm paying by cheque, is that OK? Where's the cash desk please?

### Vocabulary

Ai, não sei ...	Oh, I don't know
uma pechincha	a bargain/a snip
pagar com cheque	to pay by cheque
Fica-me bem	It really suits me
Ficam-me bem	They really suit me
Não me fica bem	It doesn't really suit me
Não me ficam bem	They don't really suit me
É uma graça!	It's nice/cute!
Estou só vendo	I'm just looking

### Expressing strong dislike

**detesto ...** I hate ...

Note that in Portuguese a double negative is possible:

**Não gosto nada de ...** I don't like ... at all/in any way

### Expressing 'extremely' and 'really'

This is achieved by adding the suffix **-íssimo** (which agrees in number and gender with the root of an adjective):

**Este colar é lindíssimo**

This necklace is really beautiful

**Esses carros são caríssimos**

These cars are extremely expensive

### Exercise 2

You want to buy a pair of black espadrilles (**as alparcatas**). Fill in your part of the dialogue using the previous dialogues as a guide.

- |              |   |
|--------------|---|
| You:         | (a pair of ( <b>um par de</b> ) black espadrilles please)                             |
| A VENDEDORA: | <b>Que número calça?</b>  |
| You:         | (37)  |
| A VENDEDORA: | <b>Quer experimentar?</b>   |
| You:         | (Yes please. They are a bit big. Do you have ... ( <b>Tem ...?</b> ) a smaller size?) |
| A VENDEDORA: | <b>Estas são um tamanho abaixo.</b>   |
| You:         | (Thanks. I like these ... I'll take them. How much are they? Can I pay by cheque?)    |

### Making comparisons

Study the following examples:

- 1 **Esta camisa é mais colorida**  
This shirt is more colourful
- 2 **Este vestido é menos colorido**  
This dress is less colourful
- 3 **Esta blusa é mais cara do que aquela**  
This blouse is *more* expensive than that one
- 4 **Este toca-discos<sup>3</sup> é menos sofisticado do que aquele**  
This record-player is *less* sophisticated than that one
- 5 **Esta roupa é a mais prática**  
(of all the clothes) These clothes are the most practical
- 6 **Este café é tão forte como este**  
This coffee is *as strong as* this one
- 7 **Ele tem tantas camisetas<sup>4</sup> como o seu irmão**  
He has *as many* T-shirts *as* his brother

<sup>3</sup> **o gira-discos** (Pt) record-player

<sup>4</sup> **a T-shirt** (Pt) T-shirt

**Exercise 3**

Can you create sentences like the ones above? The first one is done for you:

- 1 This pullover is cheaper than this one.  
**Este pulôver é mais barato do que este.**
- 2 This train is quicker than this one.
- 3 This book is more interesting than this one.
- 4 These shoes are more modern than these ones.

<b>barata</b>	<b>rápido</b>	<b>interessante</b>	<b>modernos</b>
cheap	quick	interesting	modern

**Demonstratives**

*This (one here)      That (one there)      That (one over there)  
These (ones here)    Those (ones there)    Those (ones over there)*

<b>este (ms)</b>	<b>esse</b>	<b>aquele</b>	<b>envelope</b>
<b>esta (fs)</b>	<b>essa</b>	<b>aqueла</b>	<b>cadeira</b>
<b>estes (mpl)</b>	<b>esses</b>	<b>aqueles</b>	<b>discos</b>
<b>estas (fpl)</b>	<b>essas</b>	<b>aqueelas</b>	<b>luvas</b>
<b>isto</b>	<b>isso</b>	<b>aquilo</b>	neuter forms (invariable)

The above demonstratives can be used on their own:

(**Quais** is the plural of **qual**)

Which (records) are you playing?

**Quais (discos) toca?**

I'm playing these (ones)

**Toco estes**

**'Here', 'there', 'over there'**

If you want to indicate where someone or something is, you use these words:

<b>aqui</b>	here	<b>áí</b>	there	<b>ali</b>	over there
<b>cá</b>	here	<b>lá</b>	over there		

**Contractions**

All the demonstrative forms above contract with both **em** and **de**.  
For example:

**em + este esta estes estas** → **neste nestas**  
in this/in these, on this/on these

**de + aquilo** → **daquilo** of/from that

See also the section on 'contractions' in Lesson 4.

**Exercise 4**

Can you fill in the missing words in the sentences below? Choose from:

<b>como</b>	<b>tão</b>	<b>mais ... do ... que</b>	<b>mais ... do</b>
-------------	------------	----------------------------	--------------------

- 1 Estes sapatos são \_\_\_\_\_ caros \_\_\_\_\_ estes
- 2 Ela é tão alta \_\_\_\_\_ o seu pai
- 3 O trem é \_\_\_\_\_ rápido \_\_\_\_\_ que o ônibus
- 4 Ele é \_\_\_\_\_ inteligente como o seu irmão

**o trem** (Pt comboio) train      **o ônibus** (Pt autocarro) bus

**Irregular comparatives and superlatives**

	<i>comparative</i>	<i>superlative</i>
<b>muito</b>	→ <b>mais</b>	→ <b>o mais</b>
very	more	the most
<b>pouco</b>	→ <b>menos</b>	→ <b>o menos</b>
little	less	the least

<b>grande</b>	→ <b>maior</b>	→ <b>o maior</b>
big	bigger	the biggest
<b>pequeno</b>	→ <b>menor</b> <sup>5</sup>	→ <b>o menor</b>
small	smaller	the smallest
<b>mau/mal</b>	→ <b>pior</b>	→ <b>o pior</b>
bad	worse	the worst
<b>bom/bem</b>	→ <b>melhor</b>	→ <b>o melhor</b>
good	better	the best

5 in Portugal, **mais pequeno** ('smaller') can replace **menor**

Certain of these adjectives have very different forms in the feminine:

<b>mau</b> → <b>má</b>	<i>plurals: maus (mpl), más (fpl)</i>
<b>bom</b> → <b>boa</b>	<i>plurals: bons (mpl), boas (fpl)</i>

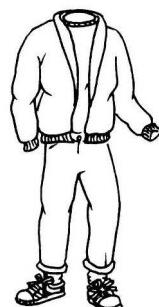
### Exercise 5

Can you give the opposites of these words?

**pouco      mais      grande      maior      ótimo**

### Exercise 6

Some friends have been shopping for new clothes. Can you guess what they have bought? (Vocabulary is given at the end of the lesson.)



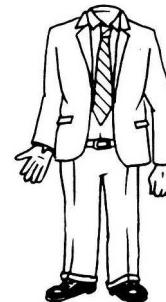
**uma jaqueta**

**uma camiseta**

**um jeans<sup>6</sup>**

**umas meias**

**uns tênis**



**um terno<sup>7</sup>**

**uma camisa**

**uma gravata**

**umas luvas**

**uns sapatos**



**um chapéu**

**uma blusa**

**uma saia**

**umas botas**



**uma blusa de malha/um suéter<sup>8</sup>**

**um cachecol**

**umas calças**

**uns mocassins**

6 **uns jeans** (Pt) 'jeans'

7 **o fato** (Pt) 'suit'

8 **a camisola** (Pt) 'sweater'

### Exercise 7

Can you decipher what these colours are in Portuguese? (See if you are right at the end of the lesson.)

Grass is <b>verde</b>	The sun is <b>amarelo</b>
The sea is <b>azul</b>	Liquorice is <b>preto</b>
Milk is <b>branco</b>	The danger sign is <b>vermelho</b>
Chocolate is <b>marrom</b>	The squirrel is <b>cinzento</b>

### Shades

<b>marrom claro</b>	light brown
<b>marrom escuro</b>	dark brown

As normal, colours agree in gender and number with the thing referred to:

<b>as calças pretas</b>	black trousers (fpl)
<b>o guarda-chuva vermelho</b>	the red umbrella (ms)

### What is it made from? (É feito/a de . . .?)

<b>o algodão</b>	cotton
<b>a lã</b>	wool
<b>o linho</b>	linen

<b>a seda</b>	silk
<b>o couro</b>	leather

### Examples

<b>uma malha de algodão</b>	a cotton sweat-shirt
<b>é feita de algodão</b>	it is made of cotton

### Exercise 8

Now it is your turn to ask for the following items. Use:

<b>Pode me mostrar?</b>	Can you show me?
<b>Posso ver?</b>	Can I see?
<b>Desejo/queria . . .</b>	I'd like . . .

- 1 a green sweater
- 2 a cotton T-shirt
- 3 a pair of black shoes
- 4 a light-green blouse
- 5 a grey silk tie

### Places to shop

<b>o centro comercial</b>	shopping centre
<b>o supermercado</b>	supermarket
<b>o minimercado</b>	minimarket
<b>a padaria</b>	baker's (shop)
<b>a mercearia</b>	grocer's (shop)
<b>a peixaria</b>	fish shop
<b>o açougue (Pt o talho)</b>	butcher's (shop)
<b>a frutaria</b>	fruit shop
<b>a tabacaria/charutaria</b>	tobacconist's (shop)
<b>a loja de ferragens</b>	hardware shop
<b>a banca de jornais</b>	newspaper stand
<b>a loja de móveis usados</b>	second-hand furniture shop

### Exercise 9

Consult your dictionary for the following. You should already know some of the words:

chemist's (shop), snack-bar, bookshop, stationer's, hairdresser, laundrette, post office

### Exercise 10

Read the following passage, answer the questions which follow, then translate it into English.

**Queria comprar uma camisa por favor. Tem outras cores? Prefiro a vermelha. O meu tamanho é quarenta. Onde é a cabine de provas? O preço é muito bom. Posso pagar com cheque?**

- 1 What item of clothing does the person want to buy?
- 2 Which particular colour does s/he prefer?
- 3 What information does s/he give to the shop assistant?
- 4 What two questions does s/he ask the shop assistant and what comment does s/he make about the price?

**Exercise 11**

Try to match up the correct pairs of shops in the box below.

baker's (shop)	<b>a peixaria</b>
tobacconist's (shop)	<b>o minimercado</b>
minimarket	<b>a mercearia</b>
butcher's (shop)	<b>a padaria</b>
fish shop	<b>a tabacaria</b>
grocer's (shop)	<b>o açougue</b>

**Exercise 12**

Can you match up the types of things you might buy in the right-hand column with the list of shops on the left?

<b>a tabacaria</b>	<b>a fruta</b>
<b>a farmácia</b>	<b>o pão</b>
<b>a frutaria</b>	<b>os móveis de<sup>10</sup> segunda mão</b>
<b>a livraria</b>	<b>os cigarros</b>
<b>o correio</b>	<b>os remédios</b>
<b>a padaria</b>	<b>os livros</b>
<b>a loja de móveis usados</b>	<b>os selos</b>

10 os móveis em segunda mão (Pt)

**Dialogue 3****Na frutaria**

O VENDEDOR: Que deseja, minha senhora?  
 ANA: Dê-me três quilos de batatas e seis bananas. Tem alhos? Quatro, por favor, e dois quilos e meio de cebolas e um molho de salsa também.

O VENDEDOR: What would you like, madam?  
 ANA: Give me three kilos of potatoes and six bananas. Do you have garlic? Four, please, and 2½ kilos of onions and a bunch of parsley too.

**Dialogue 4****Na mercearia**

ANA: Queria uma dúzia de pãezinhos por favor e um pão grande. Também duzentos gramas de presunto e um pouquinho de queijo. Chega! E um pacote de manteiga.

O VENDEDOR: Pode ser um pacote de meio quilo?  
 ANA: Pode ser. E uma caixa de fósforos, uma lata de sardinhas, um pacote de café. Tem descafeinado? ... Um pacote de açúcar e uma garrafa de vinho branco. Quanto é tudo?

ANA: I'd like a dozen rolls please and a large loaf. Also 200 grammes of **presunto** and a little bit of cheese. That'll do! And a packet of butter.

SHOPKEEPER: Is a half-kilo packet OK?  
 ANA: That's fine and a box of matches, a tin of sardines, a packet of coffee. Do you have decaffeinated? ... A packet of sugar and a bottle of white wine. How much is that in all?

**Quantities**

<b>um quilo de</b>	a kilo of
<b>meio quilo de</b>	½ kilo of
<b>dois quilos de</b>	2 kilos of
<b>três quilos e meio de</b>	3½ kilos of

<b>um litro de</b>	a litre of
<b>meio litro de</b>	½ litre of
<b>quatro litros de</b>	4 litres of
<b>um quarto de litro de</b>	¼ litre of
<b>uma fatia de</b>	a slice of
<b>250 gramas de</b>	approx. ½ pound of
<b>uma dúzia de</b>	a dozen
<b>uma porção de</b>	a portion of
<b>um pouquinho de</b>	a little bit of
<b>um pouco de</b>	a little bit of
<b>uma garrafa de</b>	a bottle of
<b>um pacote de</b>	a packet of
<b>uma lata de</b>	a tin of
<b>uma caixa de</b>	a box of
<b>um tubo de</b>	a tube of
<b>um pote (Pt boião) de</b>	a jar of

### Exercise 13

Can you remember how to ask for the following items in Portuguese? The first has been done for you. Use **Dê-me, pode me dar or queria** where appropriate:

- 1 I'd like 2 kilos of bananas.  
**Queria dois quilos de bananas.**
- 2 A packet of butter and a packet of coffee
- 3 Half a litre of wine
- 4 Can I have 200 grammes of cheese?
- 5 3½ kilos of potatoes
- 6 I'd like 2 kilos of onions.
- 7 A tube of toothpaste/I'd like some soap.
- 8 Give me 4 kilos of sugar.

**a pasta de dentes** toothpaste    **o sabão** soap

### Tudo and todo

**Todo**, which means ‘everything’, is invariable:

**Quanto é tudo?** How much is it? (i.e. everything)

**Todo**, which means ‘all/every’, agrees with the noun in gender and number:

<b>toda a gente (Pt)</b>	everyone
<b>todo (o) mundo</b>	everyone
<b>todos os dias</b>	every day

### Translating ‘some’, ‘any’ and ‘none’

- 1 In general:

<b>algum</b> (ms)	<b>algum dinheiro</b>	some/any money
<b>alguma</b> (fs)	<b>alguma dificuldade</b>	some difficulty
<b>alguns</b> (mpl)	<b>alguns copos</b>	some glasses
<b>algumas</b> (fpl)	<b>algumas situações</b>	some situations

**Você tem alguma dúvida?** Do you have any doubt?

- 2 If a sentence is in the negative, you use:

<b>nenhum</b> (ms)	<b>nenhuns</b> (mpl)	none/not any
<b>nenhuma</b> (fs)	<b>nenhumas</b> (fpl)	

**Ela não tem nenhuma dúvida**

She doesn't have any doubt at all

- 3 The plural forms of the indefinite article – **uns, umas** – also express ‘some’ but their use in this respect is more specifically related to quantity:

**umas idéias (Pt ideias) maravilhosas**  
some (i.e. a few/a certain number of) great ideas

**uns dicionários medíocres**  
some mediocre dictionaries

**Uns or umas before a number = ‘approximately’:**

**uns quinze anos** approximately fifteen years old

Note that in Portuguese ‘some’ and ‘any’ are often omitted where they would be used in English:

**Quer frango?** Do you want some chicken?  
**Tenho sal** I have some salt

**O hotel não tem quartos vagos**  
The hotel does not have any vacancies

## Someone/no one

<b>alguém</b>	someone
<b>ninguém</b>	no one

These are both invariable:

**Ninguém chegou** No one arrived

## How much can you remember?

**1** Can you translate these:

- 1 Can I pay by credit card?
- 2 What size do you take?
- 3 They suit you; it suits me
- 4 I need a bigger size
- 5 I'll take them
- 6 Can I try it on? It's a real bargain

**2** Fill in the blanks with the appropriate demonstrative form (this/that/these/those):

**1 Posso experimentar ... terno?**

Can I try on this suit?

**2 ... flores são lindas**

Those flowers (over there) are lovely

**3 Ele conhece ... homem**

He knows this man

**4 ... meninas têm muita bagagem**

These girls have a lot of luggage

**5 O que é ... ?**

What is this?

**3** Fill in the missing comparative (**mais/menos/tão**, etc.)

**1 Ele é ... alto como o seu pai**

He is as tall as his father

**2 O trem é ... rápido do que o ônibus**

The train is quicker than the bus

**3 Esta cidade tem ... trânsito do que aquela**

This city has less traffic than that one

**4 Este filme é bom mas esse é .....**

This film is good but that one is the best

**4** Read the following passage and see if you can answer the questions which follow:

**A Manuela quer comprar um vestido. Ela prova um vestido que lhe ficou muito grande. Depois, decide comprar um par de sapatos de salto alto e uma bolsa. Compra ambos e vai-se embora.**

- 1 What is Manuela looking for?
- 2 What is wrong with the one she tries on?
- 3 What does she decide to do instead?

## Vocabulary

<b>que lhe ficou muito grande</b>	which was much too big for her
<b>ficou-lhe muito grande</b>	it was much too big for her
<b>decide comprar</b>	she decides to buy
<b>um par de sapatos de salto alto</b>	a pair of high heeled shoes
<b>uma bolsa</b>	a handbag
<b>ambos</b>	both
<b>vai-se embora</b>	she goes away/she leaves

## A roupa **clothing**

<b>a jaqueta</b>	jacket	<b>as sandálias</b>	sandals
<b>a camiseta</b>	T-shirt	<b>os mocassins</b>	moccasins
<b>o casaco</b>	coat	<b>as botas</b>	boots
<b>um jeans</b>	jeans	<b>os sapatos</b>	shoes
<b>as meias</b>	socks	<b>o chapéu</b>	hat
<b>o terno</b>	suit	<b>o cachecol</b>	scarf
<b>a camisa</b>	shirt	<b>as luvas</b>	gloves
<b>a blusa</b>	blouse	<b>a gravata</b>	tie
<b>a saia</b>	skirt	<b>o cinto</b>	belt
<b>o suéter</b>	jumper	<b>a blusa de malha</b>	sweat-shirt
<b>as calças</b>	trousers	<b>os tênis</b>	trainers

As cores **colours**

<b>verde</b>	green	<b>cinzento</b>	grey
<b>azul</b>	blue	<b>roxo</b>	purple
<b>branco</b>	white	<b>cor-de-rosa</b>	pink
<b>amarelo</b>	yellow	<b>cor-de-ouro/dourado</b>	gold/golden
<b>preto</b>	black	<b>cor-de-prata/prateado</b>	silver
<b>vermelho/encarnado</b>	red	<b>marrom (Pt castanho)</b>	brown

# 6 Uma passagem de ida para Ouro Preto

A single to Ouro Preto

In this lesson you will learn about:

- different types of transport
- asking for a ticket on a bus
- the future indicative tense
- hiring a car, buying petrol and dealing with basic car problems

## Situation 1 No aeroporto

Sr Costa is travelling to New York (**Nova Iorque**). As his memory is not too good he has made a list of what he must do once he reaches the airport terminal (**o terminal**) in order to catch his flight (**o voo**).

Preciso de ...

- verificar o horário de partidas
- ir ao check-in
- entregar a bagagem
- mostrar o passaporte e a passagem
- pedir um lugar de não-fumantes
- receber um cartão de embarque
- ir ao controle de passaportes
- visitar o duty-free
- esperar na sala de espera
- e, finalmente,
- ir ao portão de embarque número ...

**Exercise 1**

Can you follow Sr Costa's plan of action? Here are the verbs used:

<b>verificar</b>	to check	<b>pedir</b>	to ask for
<b>ir</b>	to go	<b>receber</b>	to get
<b>entregar</b>	to hand over	<b>visitar</b>	to visit
<b>mostrar</b>	to show	<b>esperar</b>	to wait

and some vocabulary:

<b>partidas</b> (fpl), <b>chegadas</b> (fpl)	departures/arrivals
<b>passagem</b> (f)	ticket
<b>lugar de não-fumantes</b> (m)	a no-smoking seat
<b>cartão de embarque</b> (m)	boarding card
<b>sala de espera</b> (f)	departure lounge
<b>portão de embarque (número ...)</b> (m)	gate (number ...)

Now write down in English what Sr Costa plans to do.

**Exercise 2**

Can you remember what the following are in Portuguese?

duty-free, boarding card, departure board, non-smoking, passport control, departure lounge, departure gate

**The future indicative tense**

There are various ways of expressing futurity in Portuguese:

- 1 By using part of the verb **ir** + infinitive (you have already seen this in Lesson 4), which implies a degree of intention or certainty:

**Vamos visitar o litoral**      We are going to visit the coast

- 2 By using the present indicative tense

**Compro o presente hoje**      I'll buy the present today

- 3 By using the verb **haver de** + infinitive. Although this is less widely used than the above methods, it implies a greater degree of intention or future obligation:

**Hei de ir ao Brasil**

I intend to go to Brazil

**Eles hão de assinar o cheque**

They shall sign the cheque

- 4 By using the future indicative tense

**Forming the future indicative**

With the exceptions given below, the following endings are added to the infinitive of any verb:

**-ei -ás -á -emos -ão**

Thus: **falarei** *I shall talk*    **ele decidirá** *he will decide*

The exceptions to this rule are the following three verbs, of which the stem changes slightly:

<b>fazer</b> (to do)	→	<b>farei</b>	I shall do/make
<b>dizer</b> (to say/tell)	→	<b>direi</b>	I shall say/tell
<b>trazer</b> (to bring)	→	<b>trarei</b>	I shall bring

It is more common to use methods 1 and 2 above to express futurity, especially in everyday speech. Note that the future tense of **ser** in the third person singular is used to express 'I wonder if ...?'

**Será que ...?**    (*lit.:*) Will it be that ...?

**Exercise 3**

Go back to Sr Costa's list of things to do. How would you describe his actions in the future, using the future indicative?

- 1 **Ele verificará o horário de partidas** . . ., etc.
- 2 He will go to the check-in desk.
- 3 He will go to passport control.
- 4 He will visit the duty-free shop.

**Dialogue 1****Não comprehendi bem** 

*Paulo is meeting a friend at the airport but has difficulty understanding the announcement over the public-address system (**o alto-falante**). He asks when the plane (**o avião**) is going to land (**aterrizar**)*

- PAULO: Faz favor. Não comprehendi bem o que disse o alto-falante. Que vôo anunciam? A que horas chegará o vôo de Heathrow, Londres?
- O FUNCIONÁRIO: A hora de chegada será às duas e meia. Está com meia hora de atraso.
- PAULO Que chatice! Há sempre um atraso.

### Vocabulary

<b>anunciam</b>	they announce	<b>(anunciar)</b>	to announce
<b>chegar</b>	to arrive	<b>a hora de chegada</b>	arrival time
<b>a chatice</b>	nuisance	<b>sempre</b>	always
<b>Está com (meia hora) de atraso</b>			There's a delay of ...

### Exercise 4a

Part of the translation of Dialogue 1 is given below. Some of the words, however, are missing. Can you fill them in?

- PAULO: ... me, I didn't catch what came over the ...  
What ... are they announcing? What ... will the ... from Heathrow ...?

### Exercise 4b

Here are three things you might expect an air hostess, **aeromoça**,<sup>1</sup> to say during a flight:

- Façam favor de apertar os cintos de segurança!**  
**Querem refrescos e bebidas alcoólicas?**  
**Querem comprar cigarros, perfumes, loção após-barba?**

Now try to fill in the missing words in Portuguese and discover what she is saying:

- Façam favor de** (to fasten) **os** (safety belts)!  
**Querem** (refreshments) **e** (alcoholic beverages)?  
**Querem** (to buy) (cigarettes), **perfumes**, (after-shave lotion)?

<sup>1</sup> **a hospedeira** (Pt) 'air-hostess'; **a moça** 'girl, young woman'

## Dialogue 2

### No Controle de Passaportes

- O FUNCIONÁRIO: Mostre-me o seu passaporte. Qual é a sua nacionalidade?
- RICARDO: Aqui está. Sou italiano.
- O FUNCIONÁRIO: Quanto tempo vai ficar no Brasil?
- RICARDO: Tenciono ficar três semanas.
- O FUNCIONÁRIO: Faz favor de passar à Alfândega.

### Vocabulary

<b>mostre-me</b>	show me
<b>aqui está</b>	here it is
<b>Qual é a sua nacionalidade?</b>	What nationality are you?
<b>Quanto tempo vai ficar?</b>	How long are you going to stay?
<b>tenciono ficar</b>	I intend to stay
<b>Faz favor de passar à Alfândega</b>	Please go through to Customs

### Exercise 5

Which questions fit these responses?

- Q: \_\_\_\_\_  
A: **Sou inglês.**

- Q: \_\_\_\_\_  
A: **Aqui está.**

- Q: \_\_\_\_\_  
A: **Vou ficar dois meses.**

## Dialogue 3

### Na Alfândega

The passengers (**os passageiros**) collect their luggage from baggage reclaim (**a reclamação de bagagem**) and go through customs

- O OFICIAL: Bom dia. Tem alguma coisa a declarar?
- ANA: Não, não tenho nada a declarar.
- O OFICIAL: Que bagagem tem?
- ANA: Só tenho duas malas e esta bolsa de viagem.
- O OFICIAL: A senhora pode seguir. Bom dia.

### Vocabulary

<b>alguma coisa a declarar</b>	something to declare
<b>só tenho ...</b>	I've only got ...
<b>malas (fpl)</b>	suitcases
<b>pode seguir</b>	you can go on

### Exercise 6

Read this short passage, try to answer in English the questions which follow, then translate the passage into English:

Vou viajar ao Canadá para visitar os meus pais. O vôo partirá de Londres às nove e meia e durará mais de cinco horas. Antes de embarcar tenho de ir ao check-in e ao controle de passaportes. Confesso que não gosto nada de voar, mas, neste caso, é preciso!

### Vocabulary

<b>vou viajar</b>	I'm going to travel	<b>partirá</b>	will leave
<b>neste caso</b>	in this case	<b>é preciso</b>	it's necessary
<b>os meus pais</b>	my parents	<b>durará</b>	will last
<b>antes de embarcar</b>	before boarding	<b>confesso</b>	I have to admit

- 1 What does the writer intend to do? (first sentence)
- 2 When does the flight leave? How long is the journey?
- 3 What does the writer have to do before boarding?
- 4 The writer loves flying. True or false?

## Past participles

We have already seen some of these in action in the previous lesson, representing signs seen in shops, etc. For example:

**fechado** closed    **saída** exit    **entrada** entrance

To form these, take off the **-ar**, **-er** or **-ir** ending of an infinitive:

**-ar verbs**  
**mandar** 'to send'  
**mand/ + ado**

**-er verbs**  
**ter** 'to have'  
**t/ + ido**

**-ir verbs**  
**partir** 'to leave'  
**part/ + ido**

<i>past participle</i> <b>mandado</b>	<i>past participle</i> <b>tido</b>	<i>past participle</i> <b>partido</b>
--	---------------------------------------	--

There are exceptions:

<b>aberto</b>	open (from <b>abrir</b> – to open)
<b>dito</b>	said (from <b>dizer</b> – to say)
<b>feito</b>	made/done (from <b>fazer</b> – to do/make)
<b>posto</b>	put (from <b>pôr</b> – to put)
<b>visto</b>	seen (from <b>ver</b> – to see)
<b>vindo</b>	came (from <b>vir</b> – to come)
<b>escrito</b>	written (from <b>escrever</b> – to write)
<b>gasto</b>	spent (from <b> gastar</b> – to spend)
<b>ganho</b>	earned (from <b>ganhar</b> – to earn)
<b>morto</b>	killed (from <b>matar</b> – to kill)

## The future perfect tense

This is formed by the future tense of **ter** + past participle:

She will have eaten the food = **Terá comido a comida**  
 We shall have seen the film = **Teremos visto o filme**

### Exercise 7

A **mulher**<sup>2</sup> (the wife) of Sr Costa imagines the progress of her husband on his return journey (**a volta** or **o regresso**) from New York. Can you help her by following the example below?

*He will have (landed – aterrizar) **Terá aterrizado***  
*He will have (gone – ir) to passport control*  
*He will have (reclaimed – reclamar) his luggage*  
*He will have (gone through – passar) customs*  
*He will have (said – dizer) that he has nothing to declare*  
*He will have (caught – apanhar) a taxi*

**Signs** Not all signs use the past participle; some use the infinitive:

**puxar** pull                      **não fumar** no smoking

<sup>2</sup> also, **a esposa** 'wife'

**Exercise 8**

Can you match the following signs with their equivalent in English?

<b>proibido estacionar</b>	<b>ocupado</b>	<b>empurrar</b>	<b>cancelado</b>
push	CANCELLED	engaged	NO WAITING

**Dialogue 4*****Na estação Rodoviária***<sup>3</sup>

TERESA: Faz favor. Quando é o próximo ônibus<sup>4</sup> para Ouro Preto?  
 FUNCIONÁRIO: Amanhã de manhã às 7.30. É um executivo.  
 TERESA: Queria uma ida e volta, por favor. De que plataforma<sup>5</sup> sai o ônibus?  
 FUNCIONÁRIO: Da plataforma quatro. Aqui está a passagem<sup>6</sup> da senhora . . . e o troco. . . . Quer uma tabela de horário?

3 a estação dos autocarros (Pt) 'bus station'

4 o autocarro (Pt) 'bus'

5 a linha (Pt) 'platform'

6 o bilhete (Pt) 'fare/ticket'

**Vocabulary**

<b>o próximo ônibus para</b>	the next bus for
<b>amanhã de manhã</b>	tomorrow morning
<b>é um executivo</b>	it's an executive coach
<b>é um super luxo</b>	it's a first class coach
<b>uma ida e volta</b>	a return ( <b>uma ida</b> single)
<b>de que plataforma sai o ônibus?</b>	which platform does the bus leave from?
<b>a passagem e o troco</b>	the ticket and the change
<b>uma tabela de horário</b>	timetable

**Expressing 'to miss'**

To miss a train/bus, etc. = **perder** ('to lose'):

**Perdi o meu trem** I missed my train

To miss a person/place, etc. = **sentir falta de** or **ter saudades de**:

**Tenho saudades do Brasil** I miss Brazil  
**Sinto falta dele** I miss him

**Exercise 9**

Can you say in Portuguese:

When is the next train for Santos? How much is a return? I'd like a timetable please. We would like three singles to Bauru. What platform does the train leave from?

**Exercise 10**

Look at the useful information below. Try to work out what the symbols mean and answer the following questions:



1 How would you translate **serviço sanitário**?

2 What is the name of the train station?

3 Which facilities are ahead by: a) 500m b) 1000m?

4 Which four types of transport are illustrated above?

**Vocabulary**

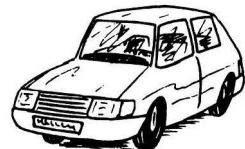
guia guide  
serviço mecânico garage service  
área de campismo camping site

abastecimento filling station  
ponto de parada bus stop  
pronto socorro first aid

**Other types of transport****Exercise 11**

Below are some drawings of different means of transport labelled in Portuguese. Can you put the correct English translation with each drawing?

**Ando de ...** I go by ... (from **andar** 'to walk')



de carro



de metrô<sup>7</sup>



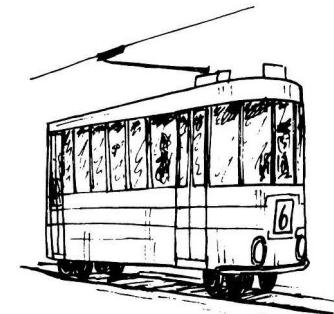
de ônibus<sup>8</sup>



a pé



de táxi



de bonde<sup>9</sup>

7 **de metro** (Pt) 'by underground'

8 **de autocarro** (Pt) 'by bus'

9 **de eléctrico** (Pt) 'by tram'

**o ponto de táxis** 'taxi rank' (a praça de táxis Pt)

by underground	by taxi	by bus	by car
on foot	by tram		

To ask to go somewhere, use **para** (to/for) + place:

**Para Búzios faz favor/a Pousada do Arco-Íris, etc.**

**Using por and para**

Both **por** and **para** mean 'for' but there are subtle differences:

**Para** = purpose:

I'd like a car for the weekend  
(i.e. *for the purpose of* driving it)

**Queria um carro para o fim de semana**

**Por** = because of:

Do I have to pay for the mileage?  
(i.e. *because of* the mileage)  
**Tenho de pagar pela quilometragem?**

If followed by the definite article, **por** contracts:

**por + o = pelo**  
**por + os = pelos**

**por + a = pela**  
**por + as = pelas**

### Example

**Obrigado pela carona**

Thanks for the lift

**Por** also expresses 'by/through/for' (projected time):

**Anda pela cidade**

He walks through the city

**O livro foi escrito por Pessoa**

The book was written by Pessoa

**Vamos por quinze dias**

We are going for a fortnight

### Expressing 'to'

**Para** is used to imply long distance and a long stay:

**Vou para Portugal**

I'm going *to* Portugal

**A** implies a short distance and short duration:

**Vou a Manaus**

I'm going *to* Manaus

### Exercise 12

On the following page is a leaflet advertising car-hire rates. Read it and see if you can answer these questions:

- 1 Can you hire a four-door car? How much is it for seven days?
- 2 What does the daily rate include?
- 3 Is there a minimum age for drivers?
- 4 Which documents are required?
- 5 Does the price include petrol consumption?

Reservas e Informações  
(021) 493-9001 e 389-3371  
Av. Pepê, 600 - IJ 3 (Sernambetiba)  
Barra da Tijuca - Rio  
Em São Paulo: R. da Consolação, 265 - tel.: (011) 255-3453 - Centro

### Tarifas ECONOMIA E QUALIDADE

Grupo	Modelo	Diária c/150 km	km extra	Semana km livre
S	VW Gol 1000	55,00	0,19	330,00
A	Mille - Corsa - Hobby	64,00	0,23	384,00
B	Uno Mille ELX	73,00	0,28	438,00
C	Uno Mille ELX c/ ar	98,00	0,32	588,00
D	Tipo - Monza 4 p. c/ ar	145,00	0,46	870,00

Tarifas sujeitas a alteração sem prévio aviso.

Promoções: Além destas ofertas, há sempre uma promoção especial para o seu dia-a-dia ou fim-de-semana. A Primal tem a melhor tarifa para seu caso.

ALUGAR UM CARRO NA PRIMAL É FÁCIL E ECONÔMICO.

Os preços incluem diária e seguro contra danos de colisão. A partir de seis dias a quilometragem é livre de cobrança adicional. O(s) motorista(s) deverá(ão) ter mais de 24 anos, carteira de habilitação emitida há mais de dois anos, carteira de identidade e cartão de crédito. A taxa municipal (ISS = 5%) e o combustível não estão incluídos no valor da diária. Seguro de acidentes pessoais e assistência em viagem, mediante pequena taxa adicional.

### Vocabulary

a tarifa/os preços	rate/prices
incluem	include
tipo de carro/modelo	make of car
portas	doors
c/ar condicionado	with air conditioning
quilômetro extra	extra mileage
ISS	tax on services
motorista deverá ter mais de 24 anos	driver must be 24 and over
assistência em viagem	breakdown assistance
seguro de acidentes pessoais	personal accident insurance
carteira de habilitação emitida há mais de 2 anos	driving licence issued more than 2 years ago

<b>a carteira de motorista/habilitação</b>	driving licence
<b>a carta de condução</b>	(Pt) driving licence
<b>seguro contra todos os riscos</b>	comprehensive insurance

**Speed Limits in Brazil:**

- 60 km/hour in towns
- 80 km/hour on ordinary roads
- 100 km/hour on motorways

**Exercise 13**

What do you think these road signs mean?

**semáforos dê prioridade    obras sentido único  
desvio RODOVIA pedestres limite de velocidade**

To help you, here are the English equivalents:

diversion	traffic lights	pedestrians
roadworks	motorway	one-way street
give way	speed limit	

**Situation 2****No posto de gasolina** 

Listen to what these people are saying:

- 1 Dez reais de diesel, por favor!
- 2 Queria dez litros de gasolina aditivada.
- 3 Faz favor de verificar o óleo.
- 4 Pode verificar a pressão dos pneus?
- 5 Preciso de mais água no radiador.
- 6 Pode encher por favor!

**Vocabulary**

<b>posto de gasolina</b>	gas/petrol station
<b>gasolina (f)</b>	gas/petrol
<b>gasolina comum</b>	two-star petrol
<b>gasolina aditivada</b>	with additives/four-star petrol
<b>sem chumbo (Pt)</b>	unleaded
<b>diesel (m)</b>	diesel

<b>óleo (m)</b>	oil
<b>Tenho um furo (num pneu).</b>	I've got a puncture.
<b>A pressão dos pneus</b>	the tyre pressure
<b>radiador (m)</b>	radiator
<b>tanque (m)</b>	petrol tank
<b>Pode encher por favor!</b>	Can you fill it up please!

(Petrol in Brazil is lead free since 1992. Brazilian petrol is unique in the world as its composition contains 'ethanol'.)

**Exercise 14**

Using the vocabulary above as a guide, can you discover what the people in Situation 2 are asking for?

**Exercise 15**

Now it is your turn to speak. Say:

you would like your oil checked and also the tyre pressure checked. You need more water in the radiator as well as fifteen reais of petrol. You also think you have a puncture in a tyre.

**Vocabulary**

<b>uma pane/uma avaria</b>	a breakdown
<b>O meu carro está quebrado</b>	My car is broken down
<b>O meu carro está pifado</b>	My car is broken down
<b>O/A ... não funciona</b>	The ... isn't working
<b>consertar</b>	to repair
<b>um conserto</b>	a repair
<b>o pisca-pisca</b>	indicator
<b>o volante</b>	steering wheel
<b>o limpador de pára-brisa</b>	windscreen wiper
<b>o acelerador</b>	accelerator
<b>a embreagem</b>	clutch
<b>o freio</b>	brake (foot)
<b>o freio de mão</b>	handbrake
<b>o câmbio de velocidades</b>	gearstick

## How much can you remember?

**1** Can you translate:

- 1 Twelve reais of two-star petrol please
- 2 Where is passport control?
- 3 What flight are they announcing?
- 4 When is the next train for ...?
- 5 I have nothing to declare

**2** Give the past participles of:

**comer, dar, ser, visitar, esperar, verificar**

Give the irregular past participles of:

**fazer, escrever, ver, pôr, dizer**

**3** What do these mean in Portuguese?

**ocupado, obras, empurrar, proibido estacionar, pedestres, desvio, dê prioridade**

**4** What responses would you give to these questions?

- 1 **Quer ida e volta?** (Say you want a single)
- 2 **Qual é a sua nacionalidade?** (Say you are Spanish)
- 3 **Quantos litros de gasolina deseja?** (10 litres)

**5** Are these true or false?

- |                                   |                        |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1 <b>a hora de chegada</b>        | = safety belt          |
| 2 <b>um atraso</b>                | = the air hostess      |
| 3 <b>a sala de espera</b>         | = a no-smoking seat    |
| 4 <b>a aeromoça</b>               | = the departure lounge |
| 5 <b>o cinto de segurança</b>     | = arrival time         |
| 6 <b>um lugar de não-fumantes</b> | = a delay              |

## 7 Não me sinto bem

### I don't feel well

In this lesson you will learn about:

- describing your daily routine
- using reflexive verbs
- using the imperfect tense
- explaining minor ailments

### Dialogue 1

#### A que horas se levanta?

One of the Brazilian football team O Flamengo describes part of his daily routine for a very inquisitive magazine (*uma revista*)

- |            |   |
|------------|---|
| A REVISTA: | A que horas se levanta?                   |
| JORGE:     | Levanto-me às sete horas.                 |
| A REVISTA: | Onde se lava?                             |
| JORGE:     | Lavo-me no banheiro.                      |
| A REVISTA: | Onde se veste?                            |
| JORGE:     | Visto-me no meu quarto.                   |
| A REVISTA: | Onde se senta para tomar o café da manhã? |
| JORGE:     | Sento-me na cozinha, claro!               |
| A REVISTA: | A que horas sai de casa?                  |
| JORGE:     | Saio de casa às oito horas.               |
| A REVISTA: | E depois?                                 |
| JORGE:     | Faço jogging por meia hora.               |

1 *Levanta-se às sete horas*

2 \_\_\_\_\_



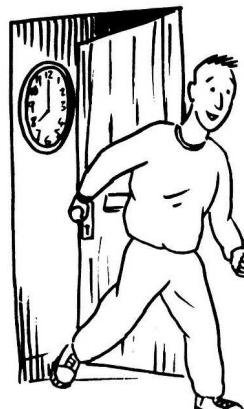
3 \_\_\_\_\_



4 \_\_\_\_\_



5 \_\_\_\_\_



6 \_\_\_\_\_

**Exercise 1**

With the aid of the drawings in Dialogue 1, can you answer the following?

- 1 What time does Jorge get up?
- 2 Where does he wash?
- 3 Where does he dress?
- 4 Where does he sit down to have breakfast?
- 5 What does he do next?
- 6 What do you think Jorge is doing in drawing 6?
- 7 Can you write the answers in Portuguese above the illustrations on page 116? The first is done for you.

**Vocabulary**

<b>levantar-se</b>	to get up	<b>lavar-se</b>	to wash
<b>vestir-se</b>	to get dressed	<b>sentar-se</b>	to sit
<b>sair de casa</b>	to leave home	<b>fazer jogging</b>	to jog

**Exercise 2**

Describe your day. Can you say:

What time you get up. What time you wash and where. Where you dress. What time you have breakfast and what you do after leaving home. (**Vou ao meu trabalho** I go to work/**Vou à universidade** I go to university/**Vou às compras** I go shopping/**Fico em casa** I stay at home.)

**Formation of adverbs**

These are generally formed by the addition of **-mente** to any feminine adjective:

<i>masc. adjective</i>	<i>fem. adjective</i>	<i>adverb</i>
<b>choroso</b>	<b>chorosa</b>	<b>chorosamente</b>
tearful	tearful	tearfully
<b>duvidoso</b>	<b>duvidosa</b>	<b>duvidosamente</b>
doubtful	doubtful	doubtfully

Where there is no change in the feminine adjective, for example in adjectives ending in **-z** or **-e**, simply add **-mente**:

<b>feliz</b>	<b>feliz</b>	<b>felizmente</b>
happy	happy	happily

**Exercise 3**

Can you form adverbs from the following:

<b>invejoso</b>	jealous	<b>sereno</b>	serene/placid
<b>evidente</b>	obvious	<b>triunfante</b>	triumphant

Reflexive verbs are so called because they join with a reflexive pronoun (myself, yourself, etc.) which refers back to the subject of the verb. For example:

<b>(ele) lava-se</b>	he washes (himself)
<b>(ela) chama-se</b>	she calls herself (her name is ...)

The present indicative tense of **sentar-se** ('to sit down – *lit.*: to sit oneself down') is as follows:

<b>(eu)</b>	<b>sento-me</b>	I sit down
<b>(tu)</b>	<b>sentas-te</b>	you sit down
<b>(ele/ela)</b>	<b>senta-se</b>	he, she sits down
<b>(você/o sr/a sra)</b>	<b>senta-se</b>	you sit down
<b>(nós)</b>	<b>sentamo-nos<sup>1</sup></b>	we sit down
<b>(eles/elas)</b>	<b>sentam-se</b>	they sit down
<b>vocês/os srs/as sras)</b>	<b>sentam-se</b>	you sit down

<sup>1</sup> -s at the end of the 1st person plural is omitted before the reflexive pronoun

The impersonal use of reflexive verbs, using **se**, is frequently seen in signs and notices:

<b>Fala-se francês</b>	French spoken ( <i>lit.</i> : French speaks itself)
<b>Vende-se</b>	For sale ( <i>lit.</i> : it sells itself)

**Reflexive pronouns**

<b>me</b>	myself	<b>nos</b>	ourselves
<b>te</b>	yourself	<b>se</b>	themselves
<b>se</b>	him/herself	<b>se</b>	yourselves
<b>se</b>	yourself		

**Exercise 4**

Can you put Dialogue 1 into the preterite tense; for example:

**Levantei-me às sete horas ...**

**Expressing 'each other'**

Reflexive pronouns can also be used in reciprocal actions to mean 'each other':

**Encontraram-se na praça**

They met (each other) in the square

To express 'to each other', to avoid ambiguity, **um ao outro** is added to the end of the sentence:

**Deram um presente um ao outro**

They gave each other a present

**Um ao outro** agrees with the people doing the giving:

**um ao outro** = two ms subjects or one m + one f subject

**uma à outra** = two fs subjects

**uns aos outros** = more than two mpl or a mixture of the sexes

**umas às outras** = more than two fpl subjects

**Position of reflexive pronouns**

If you go back to Dialogue 1, you will see that sometimes the reflexive pronoun comes after the verb and sometimes before it. Reflexive pronouns are placed *before the verb* in the following contexts:

1 When a question is being asked:

**Onde se lava?** Where do you have a wash?

2 When the statement is in the negative:

**Não se lembrou de ir às compras**

He/she/you didn't remember to go for the shopping

3 When certain adverbs – such as **já** (yet/already), **também** (also/too), **nunca** (never) or **sempre** (always) – precedes the verb:

**Ela nunca se engana**

She never makes a mistake

- 4 When a preposition precedes the verb:

**Depois de me queixar o barulho parou**

After I complained, the noise stopped

- 5 Following statements such as 'He said *that* . . .' or 'They believed *that* . . .':

**Disseram que se esqueceram do número do telefone**

They said they had forgotten the telephone number

Reflexive pronouns are placed after the verb in all other cases except one. Consider the following sentences:

<b>Ele enganou-se</b>	He was mistaken (Pt)
<b>Ele se enganou</b>	He was mistaken (Br)

The European Portuguese version follows the rules here; because there is no question/negative/adverb/preposition involved, the reflexive pronoun *follows* the verb. Brazilian Portuguese, however, places the pronoun *before* the verb. For this to happen, the sentence has to begin with **ele** as it is not possible to begin a sentence with a reflexive pronoun.

**Exercise 5**

Fill in the missing parts of the verb **queixar-se** ('to complain')

<i>present indicative</i>	<i>preterite tense</i>
(nós) . . . -nos	queixamo-nos
(eles/elas/vocês) . . . -se	queixaram- . . .
(tu) queixas- . . .	. . . -te
(ele/ela/você) . . . -se	. . . -se
(eu) . . . -me	queixei- . . .

**Some common reflexive verbs**

<b>chamar-se</b>	to be called
<b>sentir-se</b>	to feel (sorry, happy, etc.)
<b>divertir-se</b>	to enjoy oneself
<b>zangar-se</b>	to be annoyed/to get angry
<b>sentar-se</b>	to sit down
<b>esquecer-se de</b>	to forget

<b>lembrar-se de</b>
<b>cansar-se de</b>
<b>enganar-se</b>
<b>queixar-se de</b>
<b>deitar-se</b>
<b>levantar-se</b>

to remember
to tire of
to be mistaken
to complain
to lie down/go to bed
to get up

**Exercise 6**

Can you fill in the correct part of the verb and pronoun? Remember that sometimes the reflexive pronoun will come before the verb, sometimes after.

- 1 **(Você) não (levantar-se) tarde**  
You didn't get up late
- 2 **(Nós) (sentar-se) na primeira fila**  
We sat down in the first row
- 3 **(Ela) disse que eles (deitar-se) às 11 horas**  
She said that they went to bed at 11 o'clock
- 4 **(Ela) também (esquecer-se) do encontro**  
She also forgot about the meeting

**Exercise 7a**

Below are some actions that Joana performs in the course of a rather strenuous day. What do you think the actions are?

1



andar

2



correr

3



levantar

4



empurrar

5



puxar

**Exercise 7b**

Read the following passage, answer the questions which follow, then translate it into English:

**O futebol é um esporte de bola no qual jogam duas equipes sobre um terreno retangular. O objetivo do jogo é introduzir a bola na rede adversária o maior número de vezes possível (marcar gols).**

- 1 What is the object of the game?
- 2 How many teams does it involve and where is it played?

**Vocabulary**

<b>um esporte de bola</b>	a ball sport
<b>no qual</b>	in which
<b>duas equipes</b>	two teams
<b>sobre</b>	on
<b>introduzir</b>	to introduce
<b>a rede</b>	net
<b>o maior número de</b>	the largest number of
<b>vezes</b>	times
<b>(uma vez</b>	once/one time)
<b>possível</b>	possible
<b>marcar gols</b>	to score goals

**The imperfect indicative tense**

To form this tense, remove the **-ar**, **-er** or **-ir** from the end of most infinitives and add these endings:

for **-ar** verbs

-ava  
-avas  
-ava  
-ávamos  
-avam

for **-er + -ir** verbs

-ia  
-ias  
-ia  
-íamos  
-iam

Four verbs do not follow this pattern:

**Ser** (to be)      **era eras era éramos eram**

**Ter** (to have)      **tinha tinhias tinha tínhamos tinham**

**Vir** (to come)      **vinha vinhas vinha vínhamos vinham**

**Pôr** (to put)      **punha punhas punha púnhamos punham**

**Using the imperfect tense**

**1** The imperfect is a past tense and expresses, for example: 'He was eating' or 'They were shopping'. Unlike the other past tense we have seen already (the preterite), the imperfect is used for actions in the past which are incomplete and which have no precise time limits:

**Eu andava no parque**

I was walking in the park

In this sentence the time when the walking began is unknown and the time when it ended is also unknown. Compare this to the preterite tense:

**Andei a pé toda a manhã**      I walked all morning

Here, the walking has been confined to a particular period of time – all morning.

**2** The imperfect also translates 'used to':

**Eu comia naquele restaurante todos os sábados**

I ate (used to eat) in that restaurant every Saturday

The verb **costumar** (to usually do) can also be used:

**Costumava comer naquele restaurante**

I used to eat in that restaurant

**Exercise 8**

Give the imperfect tense of the verbs in brackets and say what the sentences mean in English.

- 1 **Nós** (**ler** – to read)
- 2 **Ela** (**ir** – to go) **ao teatro**
- 3 **Você** (**dirigir** – to drive) **lentamente** (slowly)
- 4 **Eu** (**estudar** – to study)
- 5 **Elas** (**ter** – to have) **muitos problemas**

**3** The imperfect tense is used to describe the background to events, i.e. to describe what *was going on* when an event of some kind occurred (which is expressed by the preterite tense):

**Chovia quando chegamos à praia**

*It was raining* (description/background) when *we arrived* (event/action) at the beach

**Ele dormia quando começou o terremoto**<sup>2</sup>

*He was sleeping* (description/background) when the earthquake started (event/action)

2 **o terramoto** (Pt) ‘earthquake’

**Exercise 9**

Can you say what the following three people were doing when the earthquake began?

- 1 ... **quando o terremoto começou (pintar)**
- 2 ... **quando o terremoto começou (beber)**
- 3 ... **quando o terremoto começou (fazer a barba – to shave)**

**4** The imperfect tense also frequently replaces the conditional tense (see the next section) in everyday speech:

He would like three tickets

**Ele queria três passagens** (not: **Queria três passagens**)

## The conditional tense

This tense expresses: ‘I should’, ‘I would’, etc. It is formed by adding to the infinitive (whether **-ar**, **-er** or **-ir**) the endings:

**-ia -ias -ia -íamos -iam**

As with the future tense, the three exceptions to this rule are:

<b>fazer</b> → <b>far-ia</b>	I would/should do/make
<b>dizer</b> → <b>dir-ia</b>	I would/should say
<b>trazer</b> → <b>trar-ia</b>	I would/should bring

## The conditional perfect tense

This is formed with the conditional of the verb **ter** + past participle to express: ‘He would have liked’, etc.:

**Teríamos ficado muito cansados**

We would have been very tired

**Exercise 10**

Give the 1st person plural (**nós**) of the conditional tense of the following verbs:

<b>ir</b> → <b>iríamos</b>	We would/should go
<b>dar, ser, estar, ver, vir, ter, fazer</b>	

## Ordinal numbers

<b>primeiro/a</b>	1st	<b>décimo/a</b>	<b>primeiro/a</b>	11th
<b>segundo/a</b>	2nd	<b>vigésimo/a</b>		20th
<b>terceiro/a</b>	3rd	<b>trigésimo/a</b>		30th
<b>quarto/a</b>	4th	<b>quadragésimo/a</b>		40th
<b>quinto/a</b>	5th	<b>quinquagésimo/a</b>		50th
<b>sexto/a</b>	6th	<b>sexagésimo/a</b>		60th
<b>sétimo/a</b>	7th	<b>septuagésimo/a</b>		70th
<b>oitavo/a</b>	8th	<b>octogésimo/a</b>		80th
<b>nono/a</b>	9th	<b>nonagésimo/a</b>		90th
<b>décimo/a</b>	10th	<b>centésimo/a</b>		100th

The numbers agree with what is spoken about:

- a terceira casa à esquerda** the third house on the left
- o quinto andar** the fourth floor
- os primeiros dois carros** the first two cars

## Situation 1

### ***Na farmácia***

- ANA: Faz favor. Tem alguma coisa para a gripe alérgica? Dói-me a garganta e não paro de espirrar ...  
*Excuse me. Do you have something for hay fever? My throat hurts and I can't stop sneezing ...*
- ISABEL: Tem algum remédio para queimadura de sol, por favor? E também cortei o dedo. Tem esparadrapo e creme anti-séptico?  
*Do you have something for sunburn please? And I've also cut my finger. Do you have sticking plaster and anti-septic ointment?*
- JOSÉ: Atchim! Estou resfriado e tenho dor de cabeça. Pode ser a gripe?  
*Achoo! I have a cold and a headache. Could it be flu?*

## Situation 2

### ***No hospital***

- PAULO: Penso que quebrei o braço e sinto-me tonto.  
 MÉDICO: Parece uma fratura. Vamos tirar um raio x.
- PAULO: *I think I have broken my arm and I feel dizzy.*  
 DOCTOR: *It looks like a fracture. We'll take an x-ray.*

## Situation 3

### ***No consultório***

- JORGE: Estou com dor de ouvido e não me sinto bem.  
 MÉDICO: Ah, tem uma infecção. Precisa de antibiótico. É alérgico

a algum medicamento? Está bem, esta receita é para penicilina.

- JORGE: *I have a pain in my ear and I don't feel well.*  
 DOCTOR: *Ah, you have an infection. You need an antibiotic. Are you allergic to any medicines? Fine, this prescription is for penicillin.*

## Situation 4

### ***No dentista***

- MANUELA: Estou com dor de dentes.  
 DENTISTA: É preciso arrancar o dente, mas antes de tudo, vou aplicar-lhe uma injeção ...
- MANUELA: *I've got toothache.*  
 DENTIST: *The tooth will have to be extracted but, first of all, I'll give you an injection ...*

## Exercise 11

Re-read Situations 1 to 4. Can you describe in Portuguese this person's ailments? The first one has been done for you:

- |                                 |                                |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1 I've got a headache           | <b>estou com dor de cabeça</b> |
| 2 I've got toothache            |                                |
| 3 My throat is sore             |                                |
| 4 My arm is sore                |                                |
| 5 I've got a pain in my stomach |                                |
| 6 My back hurts                 |                                |
| 7 My knee is broken             |                                |

## Vocabulary

<b>estar de ressaca</b>	to have a hangover
<b>um resfriado</b>	a cold
<b>uma picada (de mosquito/de marimbondo)</b>	a sting (mosquito/hornet)
<b>Onde é que dói?</b>	Where does it hurt?
<b>machucar-se</b>	to hurt (oneself)
<b>Não me sinto bem</b>	I don't feel well
<b>Melhoras!</b>	Get well soon!
<b>(or Estimo as suas melhorias!)</b>	



### In case of emergency ...

For all emergencies in Rio de Janeiro dial the following numbers:

<b>193 Os Bombeiros</b>	Fire brigade
<b>192 A Ambulância</b>	Ambulance
<b>190 A Polícia</b>	Police

### Personal object pronouns

We have already met subject pronouns (**eu**, **tu**, **ele**, etc.) and reflexive pronouns (**me**, **te**, **se**, etc.). The chart below contains these sets of pronouns as well as the following new sets:

- 1 Direct object pronouns
- 2 Indirect object pronouns
- 3 Pronouns after a preposition
- 4 Pronouns after the preposition **com**

Sub- ject	Reflexive	Direct	Indirect	After a pre- position	After <b>com</b>
<b>eu</b>	<b>me</b>	<b>me</b>	<b>me</b>	<b>mim</b>	<b>comigo</b>
I	myself	me	to me	me	with me
<b>tu</b>	<b>te</b>	<b>te</b>	<b>te</b>	<b>ti</b>	<b>contigo</b>
you	yourself	you	to you	you	with you
<b>ele</b>	<b>se</b>	<b>o</b>	<b>lhe</b>	<b>ele</b>	<b>com ele</b>
he	himself	him/it	to him	him	with him
<b>ela</b>	<b>se</b>	<b>a</b>	<b>lhe</b>	<b>ela</b>	<b>com ela</b>
she	herself	her/it	to her	her	with her
<b>você</b>	<b>se</b>	<b>o/a</b>	<b>lhe</b>	<b>si/você</b>	<b>consigo/com você</b>
you	yourself	you	to you	you	with you
<b>o sr/</b>	<b>se</b>	<b>o</b>	<b>lhe</b>	<b>o sr</b>	<b>com o sr</b>
<b>a sra</b>	<b>se</b>	<b>a</b>	<b>lhe</b>	<b>a sra</b>	<b>com a sra</b>
you	yourself	you	to you	you	with you
<b>nós</b>	<b>nos</b>	<b>nos</b>	<b>nos</b>	<b>nós</b>	<b>conosco<sup>3</sup></b>
we	ourselves	us	to us	us	with us
<b>(vós)</b>	<b>(vos)</b>	<b>(vos)</b>	<b>(vos)</b>	<b>(vós)</b>	<b>convosco</b>
you	yourselves	you	to you	you	with you
<b>eles</b>	<b>se</b>	<b>os</b>	<b>lhes</b>	<b>eles</b>	<b>com eles</b>
they	themselves	them	to them	them	with them
<b>elas</b>	<b>se</b>	<b>as</b>	<b>lhes</b>	<b>elas</b>	<b>com elas</b>
they	themselves	them	to them	them	with them
<b>vocês</b>	<b>se</b>	<b>os/as</b>	<b>lhes</b>	<b>si/vocês</b>	<b>com vocês</b>
you	yourselves	you	to you	you	with you

<sup>3</sup> **connosco** (Pt) with us

### 1 Direct object pronouns: **o**, **os**, **a**, **as**

**Ele viu o filme?**

Has he seen the film?

**Viu-o ontem**

He saw *it* yesterday

**Conhece a Ana?**

Do you know Ana?

**Conheço-a**

I do (know her)

Frequently the 'it' is omitted in Portuguese:

**Gostou do clube?**

Did you like the club?

**Gostei, sim.**

Yes I liked it.

## 2 Indirect object pronouns: *Ihe, Ihes*

**Falou ao professor?**

Did you speak to the teacher?

**Sim, falei-*Ihe* (or, falei com ele)**

Yes I spoke to *him*

**Deu os livros às crianças?**

Did you give the books to the children?

**Dei-*Ihes* os livros mais cedo**

I gave the books to *them* earlier

## 3 Pronouns after a preposition

**Falaram de nós**

They spoke about us

**Tenho boas notícias para ele**

I have good news for him

**Pensavam em mim**

They were thinking about me

## 4 Pronouns after the preposition **com** (with)

This preposition contracts with the pronouns **mim, ti, si, nós** and **vós**:

**Você quer falar comigo?**

Do you want to speak to me?

**Ele pensa que vai contigo ao café**

He thinks that he is going with you to the café

**Posso estudar consigo<sup>4</sup>?**

Can I study with you?

**Cantou conosco**

He sang with us

**Vamos convosco<sup>5</sup>?**

Are we going with you?

<sup>4</sup> In Brazil you are more likely to hear '**com você**'

<sup>5</sup> **vamos convosco** (Pt); '**vamos com vocês**' also commonly heard

## Position of direct and indirect pronouns

The same rules apply for these pronouns as for the reflexive pronouns, i.e. they are placed:

- 1 *Before the verb if the sentence contains*: a question, negative, short adverb, preposition, relative clause ('He said that . . .').
- 2 *After and joined to the verb with a hyphen*: in all other cases.

As with the reflexive pronoun, in Brazil (even when the conditions in 1 above do not apply) these direct and indirect object pronouns tend to be placed in front of the verb:

<b>Ele os comprou</b>	He bought them (Br)
<b>(Ele) comprou-os</b>	He bought them (Pt)

Remember that it is not possible to start a sentence with an object pronoun – the subject pronoun (here, **ele**) must begin the sentence.

### Exercise 12

Rewrite the following sentences using the correct direct object pronoun:

- |                                  |                         |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1 <b>Ela lava a louça</b>        | She washes the dishes   |
| <b>Ela a lava</b>                | She washes them         |
| 2 <b>Eu arranjei um encontro</b> | I arranged a meeting    |
| <b>Arranjei-...</b>              | I arranged it           |
| 3 <b>Tu vendeste a casa?</b>     | Did you sell the house? |
| <b>Vendi-...</b>                 | I sold it               |
| 4 <b>Você tinha as chaves</b>    | You had the keys        |
| <b>Você ... tinha</b>            | You had them            |

Remember that in Brazil the pronouns would tend to be placed before the verb: **Você as tinha** ('You had them').

### Exercise 13

Fill in the correct indirect object pronoun:

- 1 I gave a watch to him – **Dei- . . . um relógio**
- 2 I didn't tell you the news – **Não . . . disse as notícias**
- 3 He bought the cakes for her – **Comprou- . . . os bolos**
- 4 She explained the problem to us – **Explicou- . . . o problema**

## How much can you remember?

**1** How do you say?

to get up, to dress, to wash, to sit down

**2** Can you answer these questions in Portuguese?

1 What time did you get up this morning?

2 What time did you go to bed?

3 Where do you wash?

**3** Can you translate this into English:

**Normalmente, levanto-me às oito horas, lavo-me e visto-me. Tomo o café da manhã na cozinha. Saio de casa às quinze para as nove. Vou ao meu emprego no centro da cidade.**

**4** Can you ask these questions in Portuguese?

1 What time did you leave home?

2 Where did you sit down to have breakfast?

3 Where did you get dressed?

**5** What do you think these verbs mean?

**zangar-se, lembrar-se de, enganar-se, queixar-se, cortar-se, sentar-se, lavar-se**

**6** Fill in the correct verb endings in the imperfect tense:

**respir** \_\_\_\_\_ We were breathing (**respirar**)

**com** \_\_\_\_\_ You (**você**) were eating (**comer**)

**part** \_\_\_\_\_ I was leaving (**partir**)

**anda** \_\_\_\_\_ They were walking (**andar**)

**7** Write out the imperfect of the verb **ter**.

Then write out the conditional of **ter** and **fazer**.

**8** How would you say:

I have a cold; my head hurts; I feel dizzy;  
I have a pain in my ear

**9** Translate (the first one has been done for you):

**falo-lhe** I speak to her/to him/to you

**falei-te**

**falaram-me**

**falou-nos**

**fala-lhes**

**10** Read the following dialogue and answer the questions which follow:

LUCINDA: A que horas você se levanta?

LUIS: Levanto-me às sete e meia.

LUCINDA: Por que se levanta tão cedo?

LUIS: Porque tenho de ir trabalhar e o meu escritório é muito longe. Sou contabilista.

## Vocabulary

**tão cedo** so early

**tenho de ir trabalhar** I have to go and work

**o meu escritório é muito longe** my office is very far away

**sou contabilista/contador** I'm an accountant

1 At what time does Luis get up?

2 What does Lucinda then ask Luis?

3 What reason does Luis give?

# 8 Não desligue . . .

**Hold on . . .**

In this lesson you will learn about:

- using the post office and phoning
- the perfect tense
- the pluperfect tense
- using the bank: changing money and opening a bank account

## Dialogue 1 *Nos correios*

CLIENTE: Queria selos para mandar estas cartas para os Estados Unidos, por favor.

FUNCIONÁRIO: Quantos selos deseja? Quatro?

CLIENTE: Sim. Quanto é tudo?

FUNCIONÁRIO: R\$3,00.

## Dialogue 2 *Na cabine telefônica três*

FUNCIONÁRIO: O senhor queria fazer uma chamada?  
ÁLVARO: Queria, sim, para Roma, Itália. Qual é o código da Itália? Posso ver a lista telefônica?

FUNCIONÁRIO: O código do país é 0039, e depois tem de teclar o código de área para Roma, 6. Pode usar a cabine telefônica número três . . .

## Dialogue 3 *Na posta-restante*

CLIENTE: Faz favor. Tem algumas cartas dirigidas a David Sinclair?

FUNCIONÁRIO: Só um minuto, vou verificar . . . ah sim, aqui estão duas cartas dirigidas ao senhor David Sinclair.

### Vocabulary

<b>selos</b> (mpl)	stamps
<b>cartas</b> (fpl)	letters
<b>para mandar para</b> <b>os Estados Unidos</b>	to send to USA
<b>fazer uma chamada/um telefonema</b>	to make a phone call
<b>aqui estão</b>	here are
<b>vou verificar</b>	I'll go and check
<b>Quanto é tudo?</b>	How much does it come to? (lit.: How much is everything?)
<b>o código do país</b>	international code
<b>o código de área</b>	area code
<b>teclar/discar</b>	to dial
<b>a lista telefônica/o catálogo</b>	telephone directory
<b>dirigidas a</b>	addressed to
<b>um telegrama</b>	a telegram
<b>o carteiro</b>	the postman
<b>só um minuto</b>	just a second
<b>um pacote/uma encomenda</b>	parcel/packet
<b>uma carta registrada</b>	a registered letter
<b>uma carta registada</b> (Pt)	
<b>a caixa de correio</b>	postbox
<b>o código postal</b>	post code

### Exercise 1

Now it is your turn to ask for certain things in a post office:

- 1 You would like to call London. You need a telephone directory. You need to find out what the international code is for England as well as the code for London itself.
- 2 You would like 10 stamps to send letters to America.
- 3 You enquire whether there are any letters waiting for you in the poste restante.

## The perfect tense

This tense is used for repeated events or states in the past which are still having repercussions almost up until the present. It most closely translates the English ‘we have been’, ‘she has been’, etc.

### 1 Não me tenho sentido bem

I haven’t been feeling well  
(i.e. I haven’t been feeling well (lately))

### 2 Têm viajado muito

They have been travelling a lot  
(i.e. They have been travelling a lot (recently))

## Forming the perfect tense

Use the present tense of **ter** (**tenho**, **tens**, **tem**, **temos**, **têm**) + the past participle (**estado** (been), **visitado** (visited), **sido** (been), etc.). These past participles are invariable, i.e. they do not agree with who is speaking or what is being spoken about. (Remember, however, that past participles used adjectively agree with the subject of the sentence: **a porta está fechada** (the door is closed).)

### Examples

#### Têm comido pouco

They have been eating very little (recently)

#### Temos estudado

We have been studying (lately)

#### Tens telefonado muito

You have been telephoning a lot (recently)

### Exercise 2

Fill in the correct past participle from the list below to complete these sentences:

- |                |                                    |
|----------------|------------------------------------|
| 1 <b>Tem</b>   | (been travelling) <b>muito</b>     |
| 2 <b>Temos</b> | (been sending) <b>cartas</b>       |
| 3 <b>Tens</b>  | (been buying) <b>tantas coisas</b> |

- |                |   |
|----------------|---|
| 4 <b>Tenho</b> | (been seeing) <b>muitos documentários</b> |
| 5 <b>Têm</b>   | (been) <b>bastante doentes</b>            |
| 6 <b>Tem</b>   | (been training) <b>ultimamente</b>        |

<b>estado</b>	<b>treinado</b>	<b>viajado</b>	<b>comprado</b>	<b>visto</b>	<b>mandado</b>
---------------	-----------------	----------------	-----------------	--------------	----------------

## Using the perfect tense

The perfect tense is fairly restricted in its use. The preterite tense, on the other hand, translates both ‘I wrote’ and ‘I have written’ – actions which are complete and confined to a distinct period of time:

#### Ele escreveu as suas memórias

He has written (he wrote) his memoirs  
(action over and finished – preterite)

#### Tem mandado muitas cartas

He has sent a lot of letters  
(i.e. He *has been* sending a lot of letters (lately))

## Making a call from a phone box

Here are the instructions you would find in **uma cabine telefônica** (a telephone box)

- |  |
|--|
| <b>Coloque a ficha<sup>1</sup></b>         |
| <b>Retire o fone do gancho</b>             |
| <b>Aquarde o tom de teclar<sup>2</sup></b> |
| <b>Tecle o número</b>                      |

1 You may have a telephone card – **um cartão telefônico**. In this case you will be asked **coloque o cartão**.

2 or, **o sinal de discar; o sinal de marcar** (Pt)

**Exercise 3**

The English translation of the above instructions has been mixed up. Can you sort it out?

<b>Coloque a ficha</b>	Wait for dialling tone
<b>Retire o fone do gancho</b>	Insert token
<b>Disque o número</b>	Lift receiver
<b>Aguarde o sinal de discar</b>	Dial number

Problems that may arise . . .

<b>ser cortado</b> (or <b>ser desligado</b> )	to be cut off
<b>o sinal de ocupado</b>	engaged tone
<b>o sinal de impedido</b> (Pt)	engaged tone

Once through to the correct number say: **Alô?** (Hello) (**Está?** (Pt) Hello?/Are you there?). If you answer a call say: **Alô** (Hello) (**Estou** (Pt) Hello) (*lit.*: ‘I am’).

**The pluperfect tense**

This tense in Portuguese is called the **mais que perfeito**, i.e. ‘more than perfect’. It is used for actions which have taken place *before* another past action and translates the English ‘They had left’, ‘I had eaten’, etc.

**Forming the pluperfect**

Use the imperfect tense of the verb **ter** (**tinha**, **tinhas**, **tinha**, **tínhamos**, **tinham**) + past participle:

**Tinham organizado a festa quando ele chegou**  
They had organized the party when he arrived

**Ainda não tinha terminado o trabalho quando o gerente telefonou**  
He still had not finished the work when the manager phoned

**Exercise 4**

Provide the missing words:

- 1 **Ele** \_\_\_\_\_ **comprado uma pizza para viagem**  
He had bought a take-away pizza
- 2 **Você** \_\_\_\_\_ **aberto uma conta bancária**  
You had opened a bank account
- 3 **Ela** \_\_\_\_\_ **bombado<sup>3</sup> no exame de motorista**  
She had failed the driving test

<sup>3</sup> **bombado** from **bombar em** (‘to fail’) very colloquial. More common is **reprovado** from **ser reprovado em** (‘to fail’)

**Palavras Cruzadas**

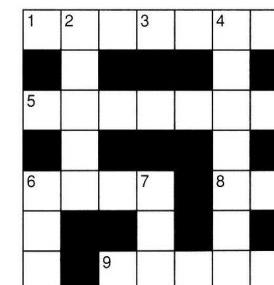
Can you work out these clues? The answers are in the Key.

*horizontais*

- 1 **Estado do Nordeste**
- 5 **Colégios**
- 6 **Roupa feminina**
- 8 **O que se respira**
- 9 **Adicionar**

*verticais*

- 2 **Catálogo telefônico**
- 4 **Terminada**
- 6 **Ilumina a Terra**
- 7 **Gosto muito**

**Provérbios**

Can you work out what the following proverbs mean by filling in the blanks in the English translations:

**Não deixes para amanhã o que podes fazer hoje**

Don't \_\_\_\_\_ till \_\_\_\_\_ what \_\_\_\_\_

**É melhor mais tarde do que nunca**  
late \_\_\_\_\_

**Mais vale um pássaro na mão, que dois voando**  
hand \_\_\_\_\_ worth \_\_\_\_\_

## More on pronouns

Before moving on to some irregularities found when dealing with pronouns it might be a good idea to revise the section in Lesson 7 on direct and indirect object pronouns.

The irregularities are as follows:

- Where a direct object pronoun (**o, a, os, as**) follows a verb ending in either **-r, -s** or **-z**, those letters are dropped and an **l** is added to the beginning of the pronoun, joined to the verb with a hyphen.

**Vou comprar o** → **Vou comprá-lo**

I'm going to buy it (car – **o carro**)

**Comes as** → **Come-las**

You eat them (oranges – **as laranjas**)

**Traz a** → **Trá-la**

He brings it (shopping list – **a lista de compras**)

An accent is added to the infinitives of **-ar** (á) and **-er** (ê) verbs following contraction with a pronoun and also to parts of the verb **traz** (as above), **fez** ('he, she, you did') and **faz** ('he, she, you do').

**'Ela fê-lo!' gritou a criança.**

'She did it!' shouted the child.

Note, however, that the **-r**, rule above does not apply to the present indicative of **ele/ela/você quer** ('he/she wants, you want'). Instead, an extra **-e** is added to the end of the verb: **você quere-o** ('you want it').

- A direct object pronoun following a verb ending in a nasal sound, such as those ending in **-m, -õe** or **-ão**, has the letter **-n** added to the beginning of it and is joined to the verb with a hyphen.

**Venderam os** → **Venderam-nos**

They sold them (books – **os livros**)

**Você põe os lá** → **Põe-nos lá**

You put them there (cakes – **os bolos**)

**Eles dão as** → **Eles dão-nas**  
They give them (magazines – **as revistas**)

## Order and treatment of object pronouns

When there is more than one object pronoun in the same sentence, the rule is that the indirect precedes the direct. Study the following sentences:

**Ela comprou-lhe o disco-laser**

She bought the compact disc for him

**Ela comprou-lho (lhe – for/to him o – it)**

She bought it (the compact disc) for him

**Você deu-me a informação**

You gave me the information

**Você deu-ma (me – to me a – it)**

You gave it (the information) to me

The indirect pronoun joins with the direct pronoun and produces:

*indirect direct*

**me + o/a/os/as** → **mo ma mos mas** it/them to me

**te + o/a/os/as** → **to ta tos tas** it/them to you

**lhe + o/a/os/as** → **lho lha lhos lhás** it/them to him, her, you

**nos + o/a/os/as** → **no-lo no-la no-los no-las** it/them to us

**(vos) + o/a/os/as** → **(vo-lo vo-la vo-los vo-las)**

**lhes + o/a/os/as** → **lho lha lhos lhás** it/them to them

## Position of pronouns in future and conditional tenses

These are placed between the infinitive and the endings:

**Limpá-lo-ei mais tarde** I shall wash it (car) later

**Vendê-la-iam rapidamente** They would sell it (house) quickly

These constructions are not favoured in spoken, less formal, Portuguese. To avoid them the following may be used:

- ir + infinitive (to replace the future)

**Vou limpá-lo mais tarde** I shall wash it (the car) later

- the Imperfect (to replace the Conditional)

**Vendiam-na rapidamente** They would sell it (the house) quickly

## Position of pronouns in compound tenses

Pronouns follow the verb **ter** and are attached to it with a hyphen (if none of the rules applies for placing the pronoun before the verb – see Lesson 7):

<b>Tinha-o comprado</b>	He had bought it <i>but</i>
<b>não o tinha comprado</b>	He had not bought it

## Dialogue 4 No banco

CLIENTE: Posso trocar um cheque de viagem?  
 FUNCIONÁRIO: Tem o seu passaporte? Qual é o seu endereço aqui, por favor?  
 CLIENTE: Estou no Hotel Itamarati, na Avenida Ipiranga. Qual é a cotação?  
 FUNCIONÁRIO: Quer trocar dólares? O câmbio de compra é a R\$0,95 e o de venda é a R\$0,99. Faz favor de assinar aqui.

### Vocabulary

#### Posso trocar<sup>4</sup> um cheque de viagem?

Can I cash a traveller's cheque?

#### Qual é o seu endereço aqui?

What's your address here?

#### Qual é a cotação?

What is the rate?

#### Qual é o câmbio?

What's the exchange rate?

#### Quer trocar dólares?

Do you want to exchange dollars?

#### O câmbio de compra é a ...

The buying rate is ...

#### O câmbio de venda é a ...

The selling rate is ...

#### Faz favor de assinar aqui

Please sign here

<sup>4</sup> cambiar 'to change/exchange'

### Exercise 5

How would you say:

Hello, Can I change these traveller's cheques, please (**estes cheques de viagem**)? I am staying at the **Pensão Bonita**, in **Rua Timbiras**. What's the exchange rate?

Once you have made your transaction you will be told:

**'O senhor/a tem de entregar a ficha na caixa para receber o dinheiro'.**

You must take your token (**ficha**) and hand it over at the cashier's desk (**a caixa**) to receive your money.

In most of the banks you will be required to stay in the queue: '**Tem de ficar na fila**' ('You must stay in the queue')

### Exercise 6

Read the following passage on Brazil then answer the questions which follow:

**O Brasil, vibrante e dinâmico, é um país repleto de grandes matas e recursos naturais. O povo brasileiro consiste de uma mistura de raças. Isto gera uma cultura e folclore bastante variados e exuberantes.**

### Vocabulary

<b>repleto de</b>	full of
<b>matas</b>	forests
<b>o povo</b>	the people
<b>recursos naturais</b>	natural resources
<b>gera</b>	produces
<b>consiste de</b>	consists of
<b>raças</b>	races
<b>bastante</b>	quite

- 1 What qualities does the writer claim about Brazil?
- 2 What does s/he say about the terrain?
- 3 What, in the writer's opinion, produces Brazil's particular brand of culture? How is this described?

## Dialogue 5

### Abrindo uma conta

CLIENTE: Gostaria de abrir uma conta (bancária). Que é necessário fazer?  
 FUNCIONÁRIO: Tem uma referência a seu respeito e um comprovante de assinatura?

- CLIENTE:** Sim, tenho.  
**FUNCIONÁRIO:** Está bem. Quer fazer um depósito em conta corrente ou um depósito a prazo?  
**CLIENTE:** Um depósito em conta corrente com um talão de cheques, um cartão magnético para a caixa automática e um extrato de conta mensal.

### Vocabulary

<b>Gostaria de abrir uma conta bancária</b>	I'd like to open a bank account
<b>Que é necessário fazer?</b>	What is required?
<b>uma referência a seu respeito</b>	a character reference
<b>comprovante de assinatura</b>	specimen signature
<b>um depósito em conta corrente</b>	current account
<b>um depósito a prazo</b>	deposit account
<b>um talão de cheques</b>	a cheque book
<b>um livro de cheques (Pt)</b>	a cheque book
<b>um cartão bancário</b>	a cheque card
<b>o saldo</b>	balance
<b>um cartão magnético para a caixa automática</b>	cash-point card
<b>um extrato de conta (mensal)</b>	a (monthly) statement

### Exercise 7a

You want to open a current account with a cheque book. You also want a cash-point card and a monthly statement. What would you ask for?

### Exercise 7b

What are you being asked here?

- 1 **Tem uma referência a seu respeito?**
- 2 **Quer um depósito a prazo?**
- 3 **Quer um cartão magnético para a caixa automática?**
- 4 **Tem um comprovante de assinatura?**

## The present continuous tense

This tense consists of the present indicative of the verb **estar** + gerund:

<b>Estamos cantando</b>	We are singing
<b>Estou dando</b>	I am giving
<b>Está indo</b>	He is going

This tense conveys the idea of a continuous action. Don't, however, confuse it with the present indicative, which can translate the English 'he is (buying)/ he (buys)' which is simply: **compra**.

In Portugal you are more likely to hear **estar** + a + infinitive in place of **estar** + gerund: **estou a comprar** ('I am buying').

## The gerund

This is equivalent to the English present participle (ending in '-ing'). It is formed by removing the final **-r** of any verb and adding **-ndo**:

<b>estar → esta → estando</b>	being
<b>partir → parti → partindo</b>	leaving
<b>beber → bebe → bebendo</b>	drinking

The gerund is used to express a continuous action:

eating **comendo** buying **comprando** selling **vendendo**

The continuous action can also be expressed in other tenses besides the present:

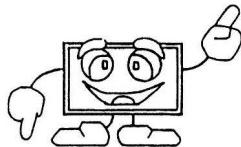
### Examples

- |                    |                            |
|--------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>estava indo</b> | he was going (imperfect)   |
| <b>estará indo</b> | he shall be going (future) |

### Exercise 8

Here are instructions for using a cash-point card (called **o cartão Instantâneo**) issued by one particular Brazilian bank. Can you decipher these instructions? Some vocabulary is provided below.

## Como utilizar o cartão Instantâneo



**Saque**  
(Conta Corrente)

**Insira o seu cartão**  
**Digite seu código secreto**  
**Aperte a opção desejada**  
**Retire o cartão**  
**Retire o seu dinheiro**

### Vocabulary

<b>consulta de saldos</b>	balance enquiry
<b>depositar</b>	to deposit
<b>sacar</b>	to withdraw
<b>saques</b>	withdrawals
<b>insira</b>	insert
<b>digitar</b>	to key in
<b>a opção desejada</b>	the desired option
<b>retire o seu dinheiro</b>	take your money

### Exercise 9

What advice do you think is being given in **Informações úteis** (Useful information)? (see p. 147)

### Vocabulary

<b>pessoal</b>	personal
<b>intransferível</b>	untransferable

### Informações úteis

- O seu **Código Secreto** é pessoal e intransferível.
- Memorize-o ou guarde-o em local seguro separado do cartão.
- Não o revele a ninguém.
- Em caso de perda ou roubo do cartão, avise imediatamente a sua agência.
- Não empreste seu cartão magnético a ninguém.

### Vocabulary

<b>Memorize-o</b>	Memorize it (your pin number)
<b>guarde-o em local seguro</b>	keep it in a safe place
<b>não o revele a ninguém</b>	don't tell anyone
<b>em caso de perda ou roubo</b>	if it is lost or stolen
<b>avise imediatamente a sua agência</b>	contact your bank immediately
<b>não o empreste a ninguém</b>	don't give it to anybody

### More plurals of nouns and adjectives

**A** Nouns or adjectives which end in **-ão** take one of three endings in the plural:

- 1 **-ão** → **-ões** (the most likely possibility)  
**a atenção** → **as atenções**      attention/s  
**a coleção** → **as coleções**      collection/s  
**a organização** → **as organizações**      organization/s  
**comilão** → **comilões**      greedy

- 2 **-ão** → **-ães**  
**o cão** → **os cães**      dog/s  
**o pão** → **os pães**      bread

- 3 **-ão** → **-ãos**  
**o irmão** → **os irmãos**      brother/s  
**a mão** → **as mãos**      hand/s

**B** Nouns or adjectives which end in **-I** drop the **-I** and add **-is** in the plural:

<b>o móvel</b>	→ <b>os móveis</b>	(furniture)
<b>comercial</b>	→ <b>comerciais</b>	(commercial)
<b>o guarda-sol</b>	→ <b>os guarda-sóis</b>	(sunshade/s)
<b>azul</b>	→ <b>azuis</b>	(blue)

<b>pastoril<sup>5</sup></b>	→ <b>pastoris</b>	(pastoral)
<b>difícil<sup>5</sup></b>	→ <b>díficeis</b>	(difficult)

- 5 Note that words ending in **-il** have two possible endings – **-is** or **-eis**. This changes according to whether the **-il** is stressed. If it is stressed, you add **-is**. If unstressed, you add **-eis**. In the case of **difícil** the accent over the **i** informs you that the stress falls there and not on the **-il** at the end of the word.

### Exercise 10

Give the plurals of the following:

- 1 **a televisão**
- 2 **o avião**
- 3 **a ligação**
- 4 **amável** (kind)
- 5 **portunhol** (a mixture of Spanish and Portuguese)
- 6 **radical** (radical)

### Plurals of compound nouns

- 1 If a compound noun is a combination of verb + noun, only the noun takes the plural:

**o guarda-roupa** → **os guarda-roupas**  
the wardrobe      the wardrobes

- 2 If the term is a combination of adjective + noun, both words become plural:

**o cachorro-quente** → **os cachorros-quentes**  
the hot-dog      the hot-dogs

### How much can you remember?

- 1 How would you say:

- 1 I want six stamps for Ireland
- 2 I'd like to make a phone call. Do you have the telephone directory?
- 3 What is the code for Canada? What is the code for Vancouver?  
Which booth?
- 4 I haven't been studying much (lately)
- 5 The receiver (phone); the number; dialling tone; to be cut off;  
to be engaged

- 2 Can you translate these into English:

- 1 **Ele tinha partido quando o carteiro chegou**
- 2 **Tínhamos posto** (put) **as xícaras na cozinha** (the cups in the kitchen)
- 3 **Eu tinha comprado um sanduíche para viagem**
- 4 **Possso cambiar um cheque de viagem?**
- 5 **Qual é a cotação?**
- 6 **Um cartão magnético para a caixa automática**

- 3 Can you give the plurals of:

**a ligação** (link), **o irmão**, **o pão**, **azul**, **o hotel**

- 4 Can you give the singulars of:

**as organizações**, **as mãos**, **os cães**, **díficeis**

- 5 Read the following passage and see if you can translate it into English:

Esta manhã fui ao **posto telefônico**<sup>6</sup> para fazer uma chamada. O funcionário lá disse-me que eu tinha de esperar um pouco porque havia uma fila.<sup>7</sup> Enquanto esperava, procurei o código de Portugal e também o código de área de Lisboa. Disquei o número de telefone. Estava ocupado. Disquei o número outra vez ... Ah! Esta vez tocava ... Eu disse 'Alô?' Mas ninguém respondeu! Cortaram a ligação!

<b>ser cortado</b>	to be cut off
<b>cortaram a ligação</b>	I was cut off
<b>enquanto esperava</b>	while I was waiting
<b>procurei</b>	I looked for
<b>tocava</b>	it was ringing
<b>uma fila</b>	a queue
<b>posto telefônico</b>	telephone company/office <sup>7</sup>

<sup>6</sup> In Brazil, telephone calls are made from either public phones nicknamed **orelhões** (big ears), or from **posto telefônico**.

<sup>7</sup> a **bicha** (Pt) 'queue'

# 9 O fim de semana

## The weekend

In this lesson you will learn about:

- buying tickets at the cinema, theatre, etc.
- discussing leisure activities and holiday plans
- using the passive
- talking about the weather and the seasons
- using the subjunctive

### Dialogue 1 *No cinema*

JOSÉ: A sessão está esgotada!  
 DUARTE: Não. Não se preocupe. Vamos à próxima sessão que começa às nove e meia.  
 BILHETEIRA: Quantas entradas desejam? Querem meia ou inteira?  
 JOSÉ: Três inteiras, por favor. Ainda há lugar no meio da sala?  
 BILHETEIRA: Sim há vários lugares no centro.

#### Vocabulary

<b>estar esgotado/a</b>	to be sold out
<b>a sessão</b>	the show
<b>Não se preocupe</b>	Don't worry
<b>a próxima sessão começa</b>	the next show begins
<b>a entrada</b>	ticket
<b>o ingresso</b>	ticket
<b>no meio da sala</b>	in the middle of the hall

**no centro**  
inteira/meia

in the centre  
one/half ticket

### Dialogue 2 *No teatro*

FUNCIONÁRIA: Que ingressos desejam e para quando?  
 JOÃO: Dê-nos um camarote, por favor, para a próxima quinta-feira, na matinê das três e meia.

#### Vocabulary

<b>Dê-nos um camarote</b>	Give us a box
<b>a próxima quinta-feira</b>	next Thursday
<b>a peça</b>	the play
<b>o palco</b>	the stage
<b>a platéia</b>	the stalls

### Dialogue 3 *No jogo de futebol*

ANA: Queríamos quatro ingressos de arquibancada, por favor.  
 FUNCIONÁRIO: Coberta ou descoberta?  
 ANA: Coberta que é mais fresquinha. Esta vai ser uma grande partida!  
 FUNCIONÁRIO: Se os senhores quiserem, podem também comprar um programa do jogo e um cartaz.

#### Vocabulary

<b>quatro ingressos de arquibancada</b>	four seats (on the terrace)
<b>coberta ou descoberta</b>	covered or uncovered area
<b>mais fresquinha/o</b>	nice and cool
<b>Esta vai ser uma grande partida!</b>	This is going to be a great match!
<b>Se os srs quiserem</b>	If you want
<b>podem também comprar</b>	you can also buy
<b>um programa do jogo</b>	a programme of the match
<b>um cartaz</b>	a poster

### Exercise 1

Can you remember how to say in Portuguese:

- 1 Four seats in the stalls, in the middle.
- 2 I would like a box at the theatre for next Saturday's show. It's sold out!?
- 3 Six seats in the uncovered area to see the football match today. Do you have a programme?

### Diminutives and augmentatives

**Fresquinho** is an example of the diminutive, which is widely used in Portuguese. The following are added to the end of a word to alter the meaning to 'little':

**-inho -zinho -ito -zito**

These endings will agree with the subject in number and gender. For example:

<b>o gato</b>	the cat	<b>o gatinho</b>	the kitten
<b>a caixa</b>	the box	<b>a caixinha</b>	the little box
<b>as mesas</b>	the tables	<b>as mesinhas</b>	the little tables

Adding a diminutive ending to a word can also produce a tone of affection:

<b>uma salada</b>	a salad	<b>uma saladinha</b>	a nice little salad
<b>um café</b>	a coffee	<b>um cafezinho</b>	a nice little coffee

Conversely, to express an augmentative add **-ão** to the end of a word:

<b>a caixa</b>	the box	<b>o caixão</b>	the large box/coffin
----------------	---------	-----------------	----------------------

### Dialogue 4 No intervalo

Three people discuss a film ...

- JOSÉ: Este filme é uma droga!
- DUARTE: Não acho! Tem uns bons atores muito famosos.
- JORGE: Mas a história não presta para nada! Estou de acordo com o José.
- DUARTE: Sem essa! Estou farto disto, vou-me embora!

### Vocabulary

<b>uns bons atores muito famosos</b>	some good, very famous actors
<b>a história</b>	the story/plot
<b>não acho!</b>	I don't think so!
<b>vou-me embora!</b>	I'm going!
<b>(ir-se embora – to go away)</b>	

### Expressing yourself . . .

Negatively: **Não estou de acordo com/Não concordo com ...**  
I don't agree with ...

<b>Estou farto (disto)!</b>	I'm fed up (with this)!
<b>É uma droga!</b>	It's rubbish!
<b>(Isto) não presta para nada!</b>	It's awful/no good!
<b>É terrível/horrible!</b>	It's awful!
<b>É tão chato!</b>	It's so boring!
<b>Não acho!</b>	I don't think so!
<b>Sem essa!</b>	Come off it!
<b>Cala a boca!</b>	Shut up!
<b>detesto</b>	I hate

Positively: **Estou (completamente) de acordo com/ Concordo (completamente) com ...** I agree (completely) with ...

<b>É ótimo!</b>	It's great!
<b>É (muito) legal!</b>	It's (really) nice/terrific/cute!
<b>Que espetáculo!</b>	Terrific!
<b>É genial!</b>	It's great!
<b>Está bem</b>	It's OK
<b>Também acho que ...</b>	I also think that ...
<b>adoro</b>	I love
<b>Acho que sim</b>	I think so
<b>É maravilhoso</b>	It's marvellous

### Exercise 2a

Using the previous dialogues can you translate the following into Portuguese:

- PAULO: *I think the film is boring. The plot is awful and the acting (a atuação) is rubbish.*

ISABEL: *I don't agree. The plot is not awful, it's great! I also think that the acting is OK. In fact (**na verdade**) the film is really great!*

PAULO: *Come off it, it's so boring I'm going home!*

### **Exercise 2b**

Look at the publicity for the following events then answer the questions:



- 1 Which poster would you choose if you wanted to participate in a carnival atmosphere? How many days does the event run? What is the last event and what prize is involved?
- 2 Which days of the week is the show on and what is the theatre called? Are there afternoon performances?

### Vocabulary

<b>a estréia</b>	opening/première
<b>o concurso de máscaras</b>	masked competition
<b>noite do terror</b>	night of horror
<b>noite da fantasia</b>	fancy dress night
<b>divirta-se!</b>	have a good time/enjoy yourself!
<b>não perca!</b>	don't miss it!
<b>1º prêmio</b>	1st prize
<b>o final</b>	the final
<b>o automóvel</b>	car
<b>o espetáculo</b>	the show
<b>a bilheteira</b>	ticket officer
<b>a bilheteria</b>	ticket office

### Exercise 3

Which type of film would you choose to see? Match up the English below with the Portuguese:

- um filme de suspense**
- um filme de amor/romance**
- um filme de terror**
- um filme de ficção científica**
- um musical**
- um desenho animado**

science fiction	a cartoon	a love story	a thriller
a horror story		a musical	

## The passive

The passive translates the English:

*He was killed by a bullet*  
**Foi morto por uma bala**

*They were defeated by the other team*  
**Foram vencidos pela outra equipe**

### Forming the passive

Use the verb **ser** + past participle; **ser** can be in any tense. The past participle agrees with the subject of the sentence as seen in the above examples:

**He was killed (subject is 'he')** – **Foi morto**  
**They were defeated (subject is 'they')** – **Foram vencidos**

**Por** translates 'by':

**Ela será atropelada pelo carro**  
She will be run over by the car

**A janela foi aberta pelo homem**  
The window was opened by the man

The passive is often replaced in Portuguese by

1 using a verb in the reflexive:

**Apagou-se a luz**  
The light was switched off (*lit.*: the light switched itself off)

2 using 'they':

**Pintam o edifício todos os anos**  
The building is painted every year  
(*lit.*: 'they', i.e. someone, paints the building)

### The passive using estar + past participle

Whereas **ser** + past participle expresses an *action* of some kind ('was knocked down by'; 'were restrained by'), the passive using **estar** reflects a *state*. Compare:

**O carro foi roubado pelo ladrão**      The car was stolen by the thief  
**A porta estava aberta**                          The door was open

## Dialogue 5

### No fim de semana

An interviewer is out doing market research (*pesquisa de mercado*) about what people do over the weekend. He asks: *O que faz...?* What do you do...?

- ENTREVISTADOR: O que faz no domingo de manhã?  
 TRANSEUNTE 1: Fico deitada na cama até o meio-dia. Depois, vejo televisão.  
 ENTREVISTADOR: E no domingo à tarde?  
 TRANSEUNTE 1: Vejo mais televisão ou ouço música. Às vezes telefono para a minha amiga para conversar.<sup>1</sup>  
 ENTREVISTADOR: O que faz no sábado de manhã?  
 TRANSEUNTE 2: Vou visitar os meus pais. Depois, vou ao supermercado.  
 ENTREVISTADOR: E no sábado à tarde?  
 TRANSEUNTE 2: Saio com uns amigos.

### Vocabulary

**'fim'** end

There are many useful expressions in Portuguese using '**fim**'. Here are just a few:

<b>o fim de semana</b>	the weekend
<b>aos fins de semana</b>	at the weekends
<b>o fim do mês</b>	the end of the month
<b>o fim do ano</b>	the end of the year
<b>a fim de</b>	in order to
<b>sem fim</b>	endless
<b>estar a fim de (fazer) algo</b>	to feel like (doing) something
<b>estar a fim de alguém</b>	to like/fancy someone
<b>por fim</b>	finally

### Exercise 4

Using the English words as clues can you find the Portuguese sentences in the above dialogues which are the equivalent of:

- 1 I stay in bed till midday (**a cama** – bed)
- 2 I go out with some friends (**saio** – I go out)
- 3 I watch more television (**vejo** – I watch)
- 4 I go to visit my parents (**os meus pais** – my parents)
- 5 I listen to music (**música** – music)
- 6 Sometimes I phone my friend for a chat (**telefono** – I phone)

<sup>1</sup> More colloquial is **bater papo**/to chat or **fofocar**/to gossip **cavaquear** (Pt) to chat/gossip

### Exercise 5

With the aid of the above can you now try to translate Dialogue 5 into English?

### Exercise 6a

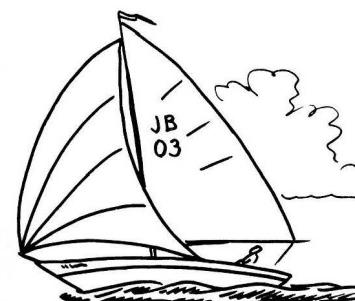
Here are some things people might do at the weekend. Can you say what they are, using the clues below?



**ir pescar**  
(for this you will need  
a stretch of water and  
some bait)



**lavar o carro**  
(more water involved  
here + soap)



**ir velejar**  
(not a good hobby if  
you get seasick)



**ler os jornais**  
(catch up on all the news)

### Exercise 6b

Can you work out what these activities are?

- |                                 |  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| 1 <b>a ginástica</b>            | (swing those arms!)                              |
| 2 <b>o golfe</b>                | (a hole in one!)                                 |
| 3 <b>o karatê</b>               | (involves lots of chops)                         |
| 4 <b>dançar</b>                 | (could include a samba)                          |
| 5 <b>a patinação</b>            | (a slippery hobby)                               |
| 6 <b>pegar onda/fazer surfe</b> | (requires the ocean,<br>the choppier the better) |

### Expressing activity

<b>fazer → faço</b> I do ...	To do (e.g. aerobics)
<b>Vou (nadar)</b>	I go (swimming)
<b>Vou passear</b>	I go for a walk
<b>Vou passear de carro</b>	I go for a drive
<b>Vou passear de barco</b>	I go for a sail
<b>jogo ...</b>	I play ...

### Exercise 7

Can you translate the following into Portuguese?

On Saturday morning I go to visit some friends. On Saturday afternoon I play golf and on Saturday evening I watch TV. On Sunday morning I stay in bed till midday and then I wash the car.

## The present subjunctive

The present subjunctive expresses the English ‘may’ and ‘might’. Whereas a sentence in the present indicative mood makes a statement or an assertion, a sentence in the present subjunctive mood expresses something which is open to doubt and uncertainty:

**Talvez você conheça a Ana?**

*Perhaps you know Ana? (maybe not)*

**Tomara que tenha sorte!**

*I hope you are lucky! (but you might not be)*

**Não acho que ele estude muito**

*I don't think he studies much (you don't know for sure)*

**Conheces alguém que tenha um carro?**

*Do you know anyone who has a car? (uncertain who the person is)*

The subjunctive also expresses emotion about something: ‘I'm sorry that/I regret that ...’

**Sinto muito que não esteja aqui**

*I'm sorry that you are not here*

### Forming the present subjunctive

You have, in fact, already seen the present subjunctive endings in the form of the imperative (see Lesson 4). Start from the 1st person singular (**eu**) of the present indicative and add these endings to the stem:

for **-ar** verbs

for **-er** and **-ir** verbs

**-e -es -e -emos -em**

**-a -as -a -amos -am**

### Exercise 8

Write out the following verbs in the present subjunctive:

**escrever** (**escreva, escrevas, etc.**) to write

**transferir** to transfer

**controlar** to control

## Some irregular present subjunctives

Some subjunctives are not formed as described in the previous section and they are best learned individually:

<b>dar</b>	to give	(que) <b>dê dês dê demos dêem</b>
<b>ser</b>	to be	(que) <b>seja sejas seja sejamos sejam</b>
<b>estar</b>	to be	(que) <b>esteja estejas esteja, etc.</b>
<b>ir</b>	to go	(que) <b>vá vás vá vamos vão</b>
<b>saber</b>	to know	(que) <b>saiba saibas saiba, etc.</b>
<b>querer</b>	to want	(que) <b>queira queiras queira, etc.</b>

## The perfect subjunctive

This is formed by using the present subjunctive of the verb **ter** + past participle:

**Não penso que ele tenha lido o livro**  
I don't think he has read the book

## The weather (o tempo)

### The seasons of the year As estações do ano

**Dezembro, Janeiro e Fevereiro são os meses do verão.**  
No verão faz calor.

**Março, Abril e Maio são os meses do outono.**  
No outono está fresco.

**Junho, Julho e Agosto são os meses do inverno.**  
No inverno faz frio.

**Setembro, Outubro e Novembro são os meses da primavera.**  
Na primavera faz bom tempo.

December, January and February are the months of summer.  
In summer the weather is warm.

March, April and May are the months of autumn.  
In autumn the weather is cool.

June, July and August are the winter months.  
In winter it's cold.

September, October and November are the spring months. In the spring the weather is nice.

## Vocabulary

<b>o Natal</b>	Christmas	<b>Feliz Natal!</b>	Happy Christmas!
<b>o Ano Novo</b>	New Year	<b>Feliz Ano Novo!</b>	Happy New Year!
<b>a Páscoa</b>	Easter	<b>Feliz Páscoa!</b>	Happy Easter!

## Exercise 9

**Como está o tempo hoje?** What's the weather like today?

**Faz bom tempo** The weather is good

**mau** bad

**faz vento** it's windy

**está chovendo** it's raining

**faz sol** it's sunny

**está nublado** it's overcast

In answer to the question **Como está o tempo hoje?**, can you translate the following replies into Portuguese:

- 1 The weather is good; it's sunny.
- 2 The weather is bad; it's raining.
- 3 The weather is bad; it's windy.
- 4 The weather is bad; it's overcast.

## Exercise 10

Read the following passage and then answer the questions:

**Um diretor cinematográfico estava filmando num vilarejo remoto no sul do Brasil. Apareceu um camponês que lhe disse: 'Amanhã vai estar mau tempo. Vai chover'. No dia seguinte o camponês disse que ia fazer bom tempo e sol e assim aconteceu durante muitos dias. Um dia o camponês não apareceu e o diretor, confiando na infalibilidade do camponês, foi a casa dele e perguntou-lhe: Que tempo vamos ter amanhã? E o camponês respondeu-lhe: 'Não sei patrão. Ainda não li o jornal hoje e a minha televisão está quebrada.'**

- 1 Where is the film director filming?
- 2 What does he believe the bumpkin's gift is?
- 3 In fact the weather information comes from . . .?

**Vocabulary**

<b>um vilarejo remoto</b>	a remote village
<b>um camponês</b>	country man
<b>mau/bom tempo</b>	bad/good weather
<b>vai chover</b>	it's going to rain
<b>perguntou</b>	(he) asked
<b>respondeu</b>	(he) replied
<b>ainda não</b>	not yet
<b>o jornal</b>	newspaper
<b>li</b>	I read (past)
<b>está quebrada/o pifada/o</b>	is broken down
<b>confiando na infalibilidade de o patrão</b>	believing in the infallibility of boss

**Exercise 11**

Look at this map of Brazil and answer the following questions about the weather.



- 1 Where would it be best to avoid if you wanted a peaceful, quiet day out?
- 2 Where would be the best place for a picnic?
- 3 Where would you not want to go if you hadn't packed a rain-coat?
- 4 Look up the words for: thunder; fog; cloudy; temperature.

**Exercise 12**

Here are two advertisements for different types of holidays. Read them then answer the questions which follow:

A

B

***Excursão Organizada!***

**Portugal!**  
**Quinze dias!**  
**Hotel de luxo!**  
**Perto da Praia!**  
**Campo de Golfe!**  
**Esqui aquático!**

!!!!!!!!!

***\*Camping Geribá\****

**cem lugares para:**  
**tendas/trailers**  
**\* \* \* \***  
**chuveiros/electricidade**  
**loja – bar – piscina**  
**lavanderia automática**  
**quadra de tênis**

**Vocabulary**

<b>excursão organizada</b> (f)	package tour
<b>quinze dias</b>	fortnight
<b>o camping</b>	camp site
<b>parque de campismo</b> (Pt)	camp site
<b>o hotel de luxo</b>	luxury hotel
<b>nas montanhas</b>	in the mountains
<b>tendas</b> (fpl)	tents
<b>trailers</b> (mpl)	trailers/caravans
<b>rulotes</b> (mpl) (Pt)	trailers
<b>a quadra de tênis</b> (f)	tennis court
<b>o campo</b>	field, countryside

In A:

- 1 Where is the holiday and how long is it for?
- 2 Is it in a basic hotel?
- 3 What leisure activities does this type of holiday offer?

In B:

- 1 How many places are available on the site and for what type of accommodation?
- 2 Name three facilities provided by the site.

### **Exercise 13**

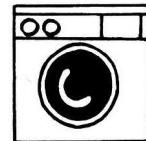
Here are some symbols of facilities offered by a camp site. Can you guess what they represent?



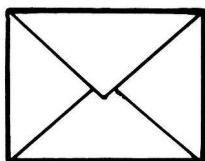
CHUVEIRO QUENTE



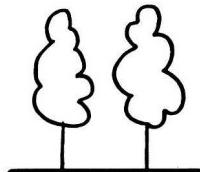
LAVA-LOUÇAS



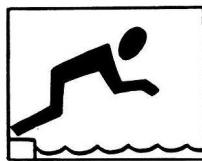
LAVA-ROUPAS/LAVADORA



CORREIOS



MUITAS SOMBRAS



PISCINA

### **Dialogue 6**

### **Vamos ao Sul do Brasil**



*Two friends discuss possible holiday plans*

- FERNANDA: Vamos ao sul do Brasil, ao Paraná, de carro.  
 ISABEL: Mas, é uma viagem muito longa de carro. Por que não vamos de avião?

FERNANDA: Porque eu não gosto de voar!

ISABEL: Então, que achas de fazer excursões a pé nas férias?

FERNANDA: É demasiado cansativo! Ficar numa pousada pode ser uma boa idéia!

ISABEL: Seria menos caro ficar numa pensão, num albergue, ou mesmo, fazer camping.

FERNANDA: Camping! Seria melhor ficar em casa!

### **Vocabulary**

<b>uma viagem muito longa</b>	a very long journey
<b>de carro</b>	by car
<b>Por que não vamos de avião?</b>	Why not go by plane?
<b>ao sul do</b>	to the south of
<b>Não gosto de voar</b>	I don't like flying
<b>Então, que achas . . . ?</b>	Well/So, what do you think about . . . ?
<b>excursões a pé nas férias</b>	walking holiday
<b>(uma excursão a pé)</b>	(a hike)
<b>é demasiado cansativo</b>	it's too tiring
<b>fazer camping</b>	to go camping

**Ficar numa pousada pode ser uma boa idéia**

Staying in a *pousada* might be a good idea

**Seria menos caro ficar numa pensão**

It would be less expensive to stay in a boarding house

**Seria melhor ficar em casa!**

It would be better to stay at home!

### **Where to stay**

<b>uma pousada</b>	inn
<b>uma pensão</b>	a boarding house
<b>uma albergaria</b>	an inn
<b>cama e café da manhã</b>	bed and breakfast
<b>um albergue da juventude</b>	youth hostel
<b>um chalé rústico</b>	rustic chalet

**Exercise 14**

- 1 What does Isabel find unattractive about Fernanda's first suggestion?
- 2 How does Fernanda react to Isabel's suggestion about a walking holiday?
- 3 What alternative ideas does Isabel have for staying in a **pousada** and why doesn't she agree with her friend?

**How much can you remember?**

**1** True or false?

**a peça** = football match

**o cartaz** = ticket

**a próxima sessão** = sold out

**2** Can you say in Portuguese:

a little cake (**o bolo** cake)

a little dog (**o cão** dog)

a little plate (**o prato** plate)

I'm fed up! It's rubbish! I completely agree

**3** What are the following:

**um prêmio, um concurso, o domingo de manhã, a bilheteria, uma estréia, O Natal, faz sol**

**4** Can you translate these into Portuguese:

a cartoon, a horror film, a thriller, karate, judo, skating, I watch TV, I go out with friends

**5** True or false?

**ir pescar** = to play golf

**lavar o carro** = to chat

**ler os jornais** = to surf

**6** What are three ways of saying that something is great?

**7** Translate the following into Portuguese:

- 1 Why not go to Bahia?
- 2 It would be a long journey
- 3 She would not like to fly
- 4 He would stay in a **pousada**
- 5 It is less expensive to go camping

**8** Read this small passage, answer the questions, then translate it into English:

**No sábado de manhã gosto de visitar os meus pais. Depois, vou ao supermercado. No domingo de manhã fico deitado na cama até o meio-dia. No domingo à tarde vejo televisão.**

- 1 Is this person very energetic on a Sunday morning?
- 2 When does s/he do the shopping?
- 3 True or false? S/he goes to a football match on Saturday morning.
- 4 What does s/he do on Sunday afternoon?

# 10 Moro num apartamento

I live in a flat

In this lesson you will learn about

- talking about where you live
- dealing with problems in the home
- using the subjunctive mood in the past
- saying what you would do if you won a prize in the sweepstakes

## Dialogue 1 *Fala da sua casa*

The following individuals were asked about where they live

- ANA: Você mora numa casa ou num apartamento?
- JORGE: Moro num apartamento. O edifício tem porteiro eletrônico.
- ANA: Quantos quartos tem o seu apartamento?
- JORGE: Tem quatro: a sala de visitas, um quarto de dormir, a cozinha e o banheiro.
- ANA: Tem garagem?
- JORGE: Claro! Não gosto de estacionar o meu carro na rua!
- ANA: Tem jardim?
- JORGE: Não, mas tenho uma varanda com vista panorâmica.
- ANA: E quantos apartamentos há no seu edifício?
- JORGE: Não sei ... talvez cinquenta, sessenta ...

## Vocabulary

<b>moro (morar)</b>	I live
<b>a sala/a sala de visitas/</b>	
<b>a sala de estar</b>	living room
<b>um quarto</b>	a room
<b>um quarto de dormir</b>	bedroom
<b>a cozinha</b>	kitchen
<b>a garagem</b>	garage
<b>não sei</b>	I don't know
<b>estacionar na rua</b>	to park in the street
<b>a varanda</b>	balcony
<b>o jardim</b>	garden
<b>quantos?</b>	how many?
<b>no seu edifício</b>	in your building
<b>porteiro eletrônico</b>	entryphone
<b>vista panorâmica</b>	panoramic view

## Dialogue 2

### *Moro numa casa*

- ANA: Você mora numa casa ou num apartamento?
- GRAÇA: Moro numa casa.
- ANA: Quantos quartos tem a sua casa?
- GRAÇA: No térreo há a sala de visitas, a cozinha, a sala de jantar e o hall de entrada. No primeiro andar há três quartos e um banheiro.
- ANA: Há uma garagem?
- GRAÇA: Há, ao lado da casa, e há um jardim também.
- ANA: É uma casa, digamos, luxuosa, não é?
- GRAÇA: É, sim. Há um alarme contra roubo, uma antena parabólica, circuito interno de televisão em todos os quartos, vidros duplos ...

## Vocabulary

<b>o térreo</b>	the ground floor
<b>o primeiro andar</b>	the first floor
<b>a sala de jantar</b>	dining room
<b>luxuosa/o</b>	luxurious
<b>o hall de entrada</b>	the entrance hall

<b>o alarme contra roubo</b>	burglar alarm
<b>a antena parabólica</b>	satellite dish
<b>o circuito interno de televisão</b>	closed circuit television
<b>os vidros duplos</b>	double glazing

### Expressing 'to live'

In general: **viver**

**Vivo em Moçambique**

I live in Mozambique

In a specific place: **morar**

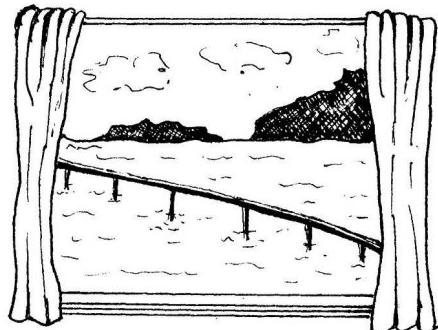
**Moro numa casa em Londres**

I live in a house in London

### Exercise 1

Three people describe where they live. Using the details that they provide, can you decide which home belongs to which individual?

1

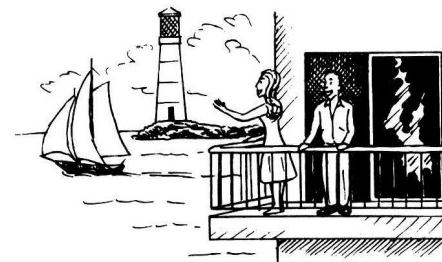


2



<b>o alarme contra roubo</b>	burglar alarm
<b>a antena parabólica</b>	satellite dish
<b>o circuito interno de televisão</b>	closed circuit television
<b>os vidros duplos</b>	double glazing

3



- 1 RUI: Moro num pequeno apartamento que tem três quartos e uma varanda que dá para o mar. Não tenho garagem; estaciono o meu carro na rua.  
Acabei de mudar de casa e agora moro num estúdio bem perto da Ponte Rio-Niterói.
- 2 ISABEL: Moro numa casa. Tem cinco quartos e um jardim com uma piscina. Comecei a construir uma garagem.
- 3 PAULO: Moro num apartamento que tem três quartos e uma varanda que dá para o mar. Não tenho garagem; estaciono o meu carro na rua.

### Vocabulary

<b>dar para o mar</b>	to overlook the sea
<b>um estúdio</b>	a studio flat
<b>bem perto de</b>	really near
<b>a Ponte Rio-Niterói</b>	Rio-Niterói Bridge
<b>uma piscina</b>	swimming pool
<b>Acabei de mudar de casa</b>	I have just moved house
<b>acabar de</b>	to have just
<b>Comecei a construir</b>	I have begun building
<b>começar a</b>	to begin to
<b>construir</b>	to build

### More uses of **bem**

- Não é bem assim** It's not quite like that  
**os bens** (plural of **bem**) goods/belongings

**Exercise 2**

Read this passage about homes in Brazil then answer the questions which follow in Portuguese:

**A maioria dos brasileiros que vive nas cidades vive em apartamentos, em andares, aos quais chamam ‘a sua casa’, o seu lar. Uma ‘casa’ típica consiste em dois quartos de dormir, sala de visitas, sala de jantar, cozinha e banheiro.**

- True or false? The majority of Brazilian city dwellers live in houses.
- How many rooms would a typical home have and what are these?

**Vocabulary**

<b>em andares</b>	on floors	<b>aos quais chamam</b>	which they call
<b>o seu lar</b>	their home	<b>(o lar</b> hearth/home)	
<b>a maioria vive</b>	the majority live	<b>(viver</b> to live)	
<b>cozinha</b>	kitchen	<b>quartos de dormir</b>	bedrooms
<b>sala de visitas</b>	living room	<b>em apartamentos</b>	in flats/apartments

**Exercise 3**

The following headings can be seen in any Brazilian newspaper property section. Can you match the English translations to their Portuguese counterparts?

<b>compras</b>	<b>vendas</b>	<b>andares</b>	<b>lojas</b>
<b>armazéns</b>	<b>garagens</b>	<b>moradias</b>	<b>escritórios</b>
<b>prédios</b>	<b>sítios</b>	<b>terrenos</b>	<b>apartamentos</b>

shops	farms	warehouses	garages
buildings	houses	for sale	flats
floors	offices	plots of land	wanted

**Exercise 4**

Now look at the following advertisements and answer the questions.

ANCHONETE no coração de Ipanema. Próximo praia. Toda equipada, 2 vagas. Bem decorada. Passo ponto. Motivo viagem. Tel. 208-7550. Hora: Rio Comercial.

**CENTRO  
3 DORMTS. . 2 GARS**

R. Augusta, 348 - Apto. 92  
(esquina R. Marques de Paranaguá). Vago 225 m<sup>2</sup> c/  
ótima sala, 3 dts. c/ arm.  
emb., 2 banh., copa, coz.,  
área de serv., qto. e W.C.  
empr. Oportunidade:  
R\$ 120.000. Z.Z. Chaves  
com zelador. Tr. 2<sup>a</sup> a 6<sup>a</sup> feira.

**ADELINO ALVES**  
R. SANTO AMARO, 71 - 9<sup>º</sup> AND.  
**0259-0166**

**MANSAO - MORUMBI**  
LINDA RESIDÊNCIA C/ 600 M<sup>2</sup> A. CONSTRUÍDA  
4 SUITES AMPLAS - SALAS P/ 6 AMBIENTES  
JARDINS - PISCINA - CHURRASQUEIRA.  
TERRENO C/ 800 M<sup>2</sup> - 20M DE FRENTE  
LOCALIZAÇÃO PRIVILEGIADA.  
ESTUDA PERMUTA / TERRENOS OU CASAS.  
EST. COND. DE PARCELAMENTO OU FINANC.  
Z-01 JL- 688

**LOPES** 3061-1011

**ITAPECERICA**

Sítio cinematográfico, nó as-  
falto, 35 km da Praça da Sé,  
8 suítes, área social magnifi-  
ca, piscina, sauna, quadra  
de tênis, campo de futebol  
gramado, total infraestrutura,  
lagos, nascentes próprias.

Tr. c/prop. Tel. (011)  
**451-5434 - HC. Sr. Alcides**

**BÚZIOS**  
CASAS PRONTAS  
DE FRENTE PARA O MAR.  
3 suítes, salão em  
condomínio fechado  
com piscina, sauna,  
churrasqueira e  
quadra esportiva.  
Centro de Búzios  
(0246) 23-1219

**CABO FRIO**

RJ  
Apto novo. Frente mar, 3 qtos, sítio,  
varaanda e gar. R\$ 65.000,00 a vista. Sítio.  
(027) 531-1145/ 522-2940/ 988-1226

**Vocabulary**

<b>vende-se</b>	for sale	<b>a lareira</b>	fireplace
<b>aluga-se</b>	to let	<b>os dormitórios</b>	bedrooms
<b>passa-se</b>	to sublet	<b>próximo da praia</b>	near the beach
<b>casas prontas</b>	newly built houses	<b>localização</b>	exceptional
<b>frente para o mar</b>	on the sea front	<b>privilegiada</b>	location
<b>com churrasqueira</b>	with barbecue	<b>área de serviço</b>	utility room
<b>magnífica</b>	magnificent	<b>estuda permuta</b>	considers
<b>boa oportunidade</b>	good opportunity	<b>condomínio</b>	exchange
<b>equipada</b>	furnished	<b>fechado</b>	exclusive
<b>a copa</b>	pantry		condominium

- Which advert is for a commercial property and what type of business is involved?
- What sort of dwelling is described in Morumbi?
- Which advert would suit someone who likes the countryside and enjoys playing football? What are the other advantages it offers?
- Which advert would be best for someone who has to travel into the centre every day?

- 5 Which advert would suit you if you were looking for an apartment with a sea view?
  - 6 Which advert is for houses near the beach.

## The imperfect subjunctive

The imperfect subjunctive also expresses an uncertain, doubtful future but one which is even more remote than the present subjunctive. It translates the English, ‘might’ and often follows ‘when’, ‘if’, ‘as soon as’ and ‘I wish’:

**Disse que escrevia** (imperfect indic.)  
**quando tivesse tempo** (imperfect subjunc.)

He said he would write (statement)  
*when he had time* (doubtful – he might not have time)

## *Forming the imperfect subjunctive*

Take the 3rd person plural of the preterite tense of any verb, remove the ending **-ram** and add:

**-sse      -sses      -sse      -ssemos      -ssem**

<b>perderam</b>	they lost (preterite) → <b>perde-</b> + above endings
<b>eu</b>	<b>perdesse</b>
<b>tu</b>	<b>perdesses</b>
<b>ele/a</b>	<b>perdesse</b>
<b>você</b>	<b>perdesse</b>
<b>nós</b>	<b>perdêssemos</b>
<b>eles/as</b>	<b>perdessem</b>
<b>vocês</b>	<b>perdessem</b>

In the **nós** form, an accent is added on the vowel before the ending:

in -ar verbs – **falássemos**  
 in -er verbs – **escrevêssemos**  
 in -ir verbs – **partíssemos**

## Dialogue 3

### A loteria esportiva

Listen to these people who talk about what they would do if they won a big prize in the **lotería deportiva** (the sweepstakes). Can you guess what their dreams are?

- ANTÔNIO:** Se eu ganhasse a loteria comprava um carro de corrida ...

**MARIA:** Se eu pudesse ganhar a loteria fazia um cruzeiro, comprava muita roupa e um palacete.

**MANUELA:** Se eu ganhasse a loteria usava o dinheiro para comprar mobílias para a minha casa.

**JOSÉ:** Se eu ficasse rico, deixava o meu emprego e viajava pelo mundo inteiro ...

## **Vocabulary**

<b>Se eu ganhasse</b>	If I won (were to win)
<b>Se eu pudesse ganhar</b>	If I could win
<b>Se eu ficasse rico</b>	If I became rich
<b>um palaceté</b>	a mansion
<b>as mobílias</b>	furnishings
<b>um carro de corrida</b>	a racing car
<b>fazia um cruzeiro</b>	I would go on a cruise
<b>muita roupa</b>	lots of clothes
<b>usava o dinheiro</b>	I would use the money
<b>(usar to use)</b>	
<b>deixava o meu emprego</b>	I would leave my job
<b>(deixar to leave/to quit)</b>	
<b>viajava pelo mundo inteiro</b>	I would travel around the world
<b>(viajar to travel)</b>	

## Expressing 'to leave'

**Partir** to leave (e.g. for Italy)  
**Deixar** to leave (e.g. a job), to give up or abandon something

**Deixar de** = to stop doing – **deixei de fumar**  
I stopped smoking

**Deixar cair** = to drop (*lit.*; to let fall)

## The pluperfect subjunctive

Use **ter** + past participle. **Ter** will be in the imperfect subjunctive:

<b>se tivesse visitado</b>	if I had visited
<b>se tivesses arrumado</b>	if you had tidied up
<b>se tivesse decidido</b>	if you/he/she had decided
<b>se tivéssemos<sup>1</sup> mudado</b>	if we had moved
<b>se tivessem ido</b>	if they had gone

1 The accent in the **nós** part of the verb shows that the stress is kept on the second syllable throughout.

### Exercise 5

Read the description below of José's new flat. He describes a few details of the furnishings to a friend. He starts off in the centre of the living room. (To revise prepositions, see Lesson 4)

**No centro da sala há uma mesa baixa para servir cafés, bebidas, etc. Atrás da mesa tenho um sofá. Ao lado esquerdo há uma mesinha pequena com um abajur em cima. Na parede, acima e atrás do sofá há um quadro com uma paisagem. Há uma televisão a cores ao lado direito do sofá e uma lareira ao lado esquerdo da mesinha. Há também duas poltronas.**

Using the descriptions of the positions of José's furniture can you draw a plan of his living room and say what the following are in Portuguese?

colour TV, fireplace, armchairs, wall, sofa/couch, coffee table, table lamp, painting, occasional table

(Vocabulary for the rest of the items in the flat is at the end of this lesson.)

## Conversation fillers

<b>pois</b> (Pt)	well (then) so/as/since
<b>sei lá ...</b>	well .../who knows? ...
<b>portanto</b>	well/so/therefore
<b>pois bem</b>	well then

<b>pois é</b>	that's right
<b>pois não</b> (Pt)	(at end of sentence) isn't it/don't they?
<b>pois sim!</b> (Pt)	yes, of course!
<b>pois não!</b>	of course!
<b>paciência!</b>	oh well! (resignation)
<b>penso que sim</b>	I think so
<b>penso que não</b>	I don't think so

## Dialogue 4

### Problemas na casa

DONA ANA: Ô Pedro, vem cá! O banheiro está inundado. Que hei de fazer?

PEDRO: Deve ser um cano furado. É melhor chamar o encanador.

### Vocabulary

<b>Ô ...!</b>	Hey ...!
<b>vem cá!</b>	come here!
<b>está inundado</b>	is flooded
<b>que hei de fazer?</b>	What should I do?
<b>deve ser um cano furado</b>	it must be a burst pipe
<b>é melhor chamar o encanador</b>	best to call the plumber

DONA ANA: Ai, meu Deus! Agora falta a luz!

PEDRO: Deve ser apenas um fusível. Vou verificar e, se necessário, ponho um fusível novo. Vou também verificar as ligações elétricas da geladeira e da máquina de lavar roupa. As tomadas e os encaixes estão em ordem ...

### Vocabulary

<b>Ai, meu Deus!</b>	for heaven's sake!
<b>Agora falta a luz!</b>	Now the lights have gone!
<b>Deve ser apenas um fusível</b>	It must just be a fuse
<b>Vou verificar</b>	I'll check
<b>se necessário</b>	if necessary
<b>ponho um fusível novo</b>	I'll put in a new fuse
<b>as ligações elétricas</b>	the electrical connections

**As tomadas e os encaixes estão em ordem** The plugs and sockets are fine (**em ordem** in order)

DONA ANA: Troquei as duas lâmpadas que estavam queimadas na sala e fui ligar a televisão para ver a novela mas agora a televisão não funciona!

PEDRO: Ah! A televisão não está pifada. O aparelho não estava ligado à corrente! Tudo o que tive de fazer foi ligar a tomada ao encaixe na parede!

### Vocabulary

Troquei as duas lâmpadas que estavam queimadas	I changed the two fused lightbulbs
fui ligar	I went to switch on
a novela	the soap
a televisão não funciona	the TV isn't working
a televisão não está pifada	the TV isn't broken
o aparelho não estava ligado à corrente	the TV (i.e. apparatus – <b>aparelho</b> ) wasn't plugged in
tudo que tive de fazer foi ligar a tomada ao encaixe na parede	all I had to do was to put the plug into the socket on the wall

There are three ways of saying that something is not working:

... não trabalha/não funciona ...  
isn't working/is out of order

... está pifado, quebrado/a ...  
is out of order/is broken (down)

The term **o aparelho** can be used to mean 'machine/apparatus' of any kind.

### Exercise 6

Can you find the Portuguese words for:

plug, flooded, plumber, a fuse, a burst pipe, fridge, washing machine, pump, lightbulbs, switch on the TV, is not plugged in, connections, socket

### Exercise 7

And how would you say the following?

The fridge has broken down. I have (**tenho**) a burst pipe. I need (**preciso de**) a plumber. The TV is not plugged in. I need three lightbulbs. Do you have (**tem**) a fuse?

### Exercise 8

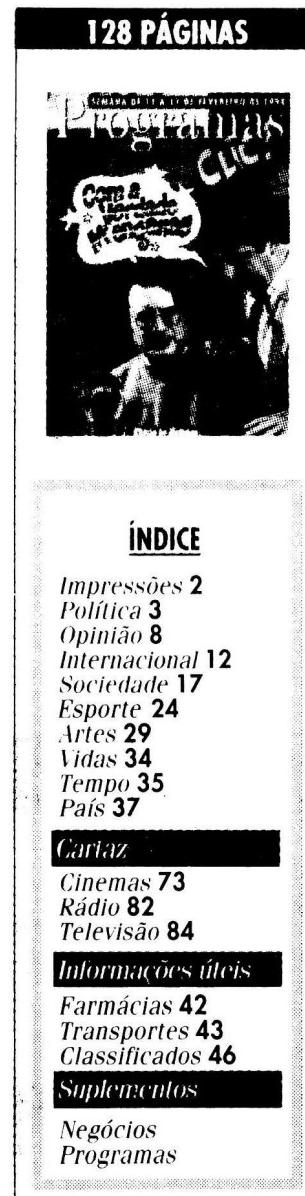
Below is a list of electrical household items in Portuguese with a definition in English. Can you decide what these items are in English?

- 1 **o fogão**  
(you need this to cook dinner)
- 2 **a máquina de lavar roupa**  
(use for cleaning clothes)
- 3 **a geladeira**  
(handy for keeping things cool)
- 4 **a máquina de lavar louça**  
(great for after large dinner parties)
- 5 **a chaleira**  
(a bonus if you want a hot cup of tea)
- 6 **a máquina de secar roupa**  
(no more damp clothes)
- 7 **a torradeira**  
(you make toast in this)
- 8 **o ferro de passar a roupa**  
(no more creases)
- 9 **a batedeira**  
(cake-making made easy)
- 10 **o aspirador**  
(your carpet's best friend)
- 11 **o microondas**  
(for instant hot food)

### Exercise 9

Look at the following index (**o índice**) from a typical Brazilian newspaper (**o jornal**) and try to answer the questions which follow.

- 1 What sort of 'useful information' is available?



- 2 You are a sports fan – which page do you turn to first?
- 3 You have a beach outing planned (but will it be warm?) and hope to take in a film in the evening. Which two sections would you consult?

- 4 You want to find out how your shares (**ações**) are getting on in the stock market (**a Bolsa**). Which section do you turn to? (Full vocabulary is given at the end of the lesson.)

### Exercise 10

Now here are some examples of Brazilian headlines – **as manchetes**. Can you match each of them to their English equivalent?

- 1 **Pânico no supermercado** – homem cai dentro do freezer<sup>2</sup>
  - 2 **Patinho bêbado depois de consumir mais de um copo de uísque**
  - 3 **Campo de alfaces roubado** – a polícia procura família de coelhos
- (a) Field of lettuces stolen – police seek family of rabbits  
 (b) Panic in supermarket – man falls into freezer  
 (c) Duck drunk after consuming more than a glass of whisky

2 **o congelador** (Pt) freezer

### How much can you remember?

- 1 Describe your flat: it has two bedrooms, a small kitchen, a living room and a bathroom. You don't have a garden but you do have a garage, a door-entry system, double glazing and satellite TV.

- 2 Do you remember how to say?

- 1 It's not quite like that
- 2 The flat has a sea view
- 3 We have just moved
- 4 for sale
- 5 wanted

- 3 Write out the imperfect subjunctive of the verb **terminar** (to finish).

- 4 Can you translate these?

- 1 **Se eu partisse amanhã, chegava a casa mais cedo**
- 2 **Se ele comprasse o carro, custava muito dinheiro**
- 3 **Se nós viajássemos todo o dia, ficávamos muito cansados**

**5** Can you name four types of room you would find in a house or flat?

**6** Can you remember three expressions you could use to help fill in a conversation?

### Vocabulary

#### **Os móveis**

#### Furniture

<b>o sofá</b>	sofa/couch
<b>a mesinha</b>	small table
<b>a mesa</b>	table
<b>o abajur</b>	table lamp
<b>a parede</b>	the wall
<b>o quadro (com uma paisagem)</b>	(landscape) painting
<b>as poltronas</b>	armchairs
<b>a televisão a cores</b>	colour TV
<b>as cadeiras</b>	chairs
<b>o aparador</b>	sideboard
<b>o cesto (cheio de fruta)</b>	basket (full of fruit)
<b>os armários (modernos)</b>	(modern) cupboards
<b>o fogão a gás</b>	gas cooker
<b>o fogão elétrico</b>	electric cooker
<b>a geladeira</b>	fridge
<b>a pia</b>	sink/handbasin
<b>a mesinha de cabeceira</b>	bedside table
<b>a penteadeira</b>	dressing table
<b>o guarda-roupa</b>	wardrobe
<b>o rádio-relógio</b>	clock radio
<b>a banheira</b>	bath
<b>o espelho</b>	mirror
<b>o toalete</b>	toilet
<b>o tapete</b>	carpet/rug
<b>o bidê</b>	bidet

#### **O índice do jornal**

#### Newspaper index

<b>impressões</b>	impressions	<b>cartaz</b>	showing/what's on
<b>política</b>	politics	<b>cinemas</b>	cinemas
<b>opinião</b>	opinion	<b>rádio</b>	radio

<b>internacional</b>	international	<b>televisão</b>	TV
<b>sociedade</b>	society	<b>farmácias</b>	chemists
<b>esporte</b>	sports	<b>transportes</b>	transport
<b>artes</b>	the arts	<b>classificados</b>	classified ads
<b>vidas</b>	lives	<b>tempo</b>	weather
<b>suplementos</b>	supplements	<b>país</b>	country
<b>negócios</b>	business	<b>programas</b>	programmes

# 11 Encontramo-nos mais tarde?

Shall we meet later?

In this lesson you will learn about:

- making friends
- expressing past experiences and future plans
- the future subjunctive
- similarities between English and Portuguese and hints for reading

## Situation 1

### **Um congresso**

Four people plan to meet up at a conference (**um congresso**) the following summer. In order to make the initial introductions easier, they decide to circulate a small dossier about themselves on tape before the event.

1

Nome:	Eric Boucher
Idade:	35
Profissão:	correspondente estrangeiro
Estatura:	alto
Bebida preferida:	conhaque
Passatempo predileto:	alpinismo
Carro:	Mercedes

## Vocabulary

<b>o correspondente estrangeiro</b>	foreign correspondent
<b>a estatura</b>	build
<b>a bebida preferida</b>	favourite drink
<b>passatempo predileto</b>	favourite hobby
(or <b>favorito</b> – favourite)	

2

<b>Nome:</b>	Sarah Blackthorpe
<b>Idade:</b>	33
<b>Profissão:</b>	bibliotecária
<b>Estatura:</b>	baixa
<b>Bebida preferida:</b>	laranjada
<b>Passatempo predileto:</b>	crochê
<b>Carro:</b>	Volkswagen

## Vocabulary

<b>a laranjada</b>	orangeade
<b>a bibliotecária</b>	librarian
<b>o crochê</b>	crochet

3

<b>Nome:</b>	Maria Napoli
<b>Idade:</b>	28
<b>Profissão:</b>	estilista
<b>Estatura:</b>	média
<b>Bebida preferida:</b>	Martini
<b>Passatempo predileto:</b>	vôo livre
<b>Carro:</b>	Motocicleta (Harley Davidson)

## Vocabulary

<b>a estilista</b>	fashion designer
<b>a motocicleta</b>	motorbike
<b>o vôo livre</b>	hang gliding

4

<b>Nome:</b>	<b>Hugo Van Vliet</b>
<b>Idade:</b>	<b>40</b>
<b>Profissão:</b>	<b>advogado</b>
<b>Estatura:</b>	<b>média</b>
<b>Bebida preferida:</b>	<b>vinho tinto</b>
<b>Passatempo predileto:</b>	<b>filatelia</b>
<b>Carro:</b>	<b>não dirijo: bicicleta</b>

### Vocabulary

<b>o advogado</b>	lawyer	<b>o vinho tinto</b>	red wine
<b>a filatelia</b>	stamp collecting	<b>não dirijo</b>	I don't drive
<b>a bicicleta</b>	bicycle		

### Exercise 1

Using the information given above can you answer the following questions:

- 1 Will Maria find much in common with Hugo? Give two reasons.
- 2 Will Hugo find Eric's hobby appealing?
- 3 Which two individuals are more likely to end up at the bar?
- 4 What is Eric likely to make of Hugo's mode of transport?

### Exercise 2

Create your own dossier using the same headings.

## The future subjunctive

The future subjunctive is used to translate the future but – unlike the future indicative tense, which makes statements about the future which have an air of probability or certainty – the future subjunctive is used to translate a future which is clouded in uncertainty and doubt and is often heralded by ‘when’, ‘if’ or ‘as soon as’.

<b>Estará cansada</b> (future indic.)	<b>quando chegar</b> (future subjunc.)
--	---

She will be tired  
(statement)

*when she arrives*  
(it's doubtful when she will arrive)

## Forming the future subjunctive

Take the 3rd person plural of any verb in the preterite tense, remove the ending **-ram** and add: **-r -res -r -rmos -rem**

### Example

<b>partir</b>	to leave
<b>partiram</b>	they left (preterite) → <b>parti</b> + above endings
<b>eu</b>	<b>partir</b>
<b>tu</b>	<b>partires</b>
<b>ele/a</b>	<b>partir</b>
<b>você</b>	<b>partir</b>
<b>nós</b>	<b>partirmos</b>
<b>eles/as</b>	<b>partirem</b>
<b>vocês</b>	<b>partirem</b>

## The future perfect subjunctive

The future perfect subjunctive, formed by the future subjunctive of the verb **ter** (**tiver, tiveres, tiver, tivermos, tiverem**) + past participle, is used in a similar way to the future subjunctive but is not as widely used.

**Se não tiveres mandado o pacote amanhã, ficarei muito zangado**  
If you haven't sent the parcel by tomorrow, I will be very angry

## Dialogue 1

### No Congresso



*The four individuals finally meet*

<b>HUGO:</b>	Amanhã vou fazer turismo. Pretendo visitar todos os museus na cidade. Quer ir comigo?
<b>ERIC:</b>	Infelizmente, não posso. Amanhã tenho de escrever um artigo para o meu jornal ...

- MARIA: Não está a fim de assistir a um curso de pára-quedismo amanhã?
- SARAH: Ah, obrigada mas não me interesso por esportes. Por que não nos encontramos mais tarde para tomar um café?
- MARIA: Combinado!

### Vocabulary

<b>fazer turismo</b>	to go sightseeing
<b>pretender</b>	to plan to
<b>quer ir comigo?</b>	do you want to come with me?
<b>um artigo</b>	an article
<b>não está a fim de?</b>	don't you fancy ...?
<b>assistir a</b>	to attend
<b>um curso de pára-quedismo/ saltar de pára-quedas</b>	a course in parachuting
<b>não me interesso por</b>	I'm not interested in
<b>Por que não nos encontramos mais tarde?</b>	Why don't we meet later?
<b>combinado!</b>	agreed!

### Exercise 3

Can you answer the following questions in Portuguese?

- 1 **O que quer fazer o Hugo? (Quer fazer ...?)**
- 2 **O que tem de fazer o Eric no dia seguinte?**
- 3 **A Maria convida a Sarah a assistir a um curso. Que curso?**
- 4 **A Sarah aceita ou recusa?**

### Vocabulary

<b>o dia seguinte</b>	the following day	<b>convidar</b>	to invite
<b>um convite</b>	an invitation	<b>aceitar</b>	to accept
<b>recusar</b>	to refuse		

### Invitations

- Quer ir (ao cinema)?**  
Do you want to go ...?

- Não está a fim de (ir)?**  
Don't you fancy (going)?
- Quer sair comigo?**  
Do you want to go out with me?
- Encontramo-nos mais tarde?**  
Do you want to meet later?/Let's meet later

<b>Gostaria de o/a convidar ... /</b>
<b>Gostaria de convidar você</b>
I'd like to invite you ...
<b>Vens ou não vens?</b>
Are you (familiar) coming or not?
<b>Vou já!</b>
I'm coming! (Use <b>ir</b> (to go), not <b>vir</b> (to come) – lit.: 'I'm going there right away')

### Accepting and refusing

#### Aceitar (accepting)

- Gostaria muito de (ir/visitar)**  
I'd really like to (go/visit)
- Parece-me uma boa idéia**  
It seems like a good idea

- Por que não?**  
Why not?

- Gostaria muito**  
I'd like that a lot
- (es)tá bom/bem**  
OK

- O que está passando?**  
What's on? (at the cinema, etc.)

#### Recusar (refusing)

- Infelizmente, não posso**  
Unfortunately, I can't

**Acho que não é possível**  
I don't think it's possible

**Obrigado/a, mas não estou a fim ...**  
Thanks, but I don't fancy ...

**Obrigado/a, mas não me interesso por ...**  
Thanks, but I'm not a fan of ...

**Não posso hoje à noite, já fiz outros planos**  
I can't tonight, I've already made other plans

#### Exercise 4

Now it's your turn to speak. Using the information above, make up appropriate responses to the sentences below:

- A: **Gostaria de a convidar para o jantar hoje à noite**
- B:
- A: **Não faz mal! Em vez de hoje à noite, quer ir ao cinema no fim de semana?**
- B:
- A: **Um bom filme francês.**
- B:

#### Saying how you have been feeling

The verb **andar** ('to walk/to progress') is used idiomatically to express how someone has been feeling lately:

**Ando nervoso/a**  
I've been on edge lately

**Andam despreocupados/as**  
They've been very happy-go-lucky recently

#### Small talk

If you have just met someone and don't know anything about them, you will want to find out basic things such as: 'Where are you from?', 'What's your name?', 'What do you do?', 'Are you on holiday?' and chat about the weather.

#### Exercise 5

We have already covered these areas but, just to refresh your memory, here are a few phrases you will need. Unfortunately the English translations have got mixed up, so first you will have to decide which is which:

<b>Tudo bem?</b>	Where are you from?
<b>Como vai?</b>	What's your name?
<b>Como se chama?</b>	What do you do?
<b>De onde é?</b>	The weather is very good/bad
<b>O que faz?</b>	Are you on holiday?
<b>Está em férias?</b>	Is everything OK?
<b>O tempo está muito bom/ruim</b>	My name is
<b>Chamo-me</b>	How are you?

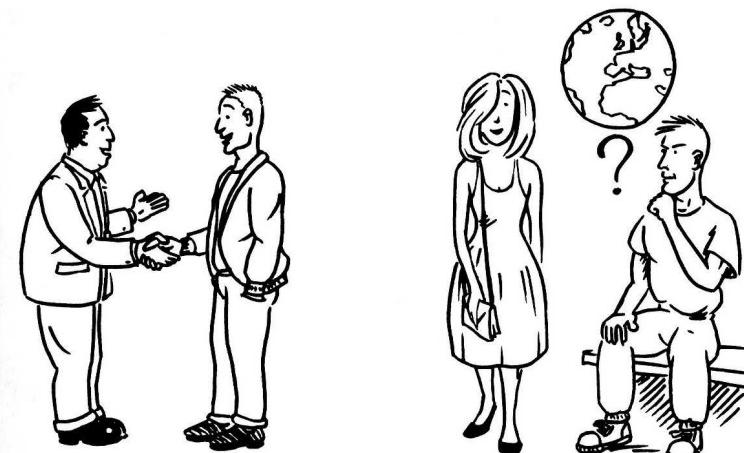
#### Exercise 6

Now look at the following captions showing different situations where people are meeting for the first time. Using the vocabulary above plus earlier vocabulary, can you create the dialogues suggested by the drawings?

1



2



1. Q: ..... A: .....

2. Q: ..... A: .....

3



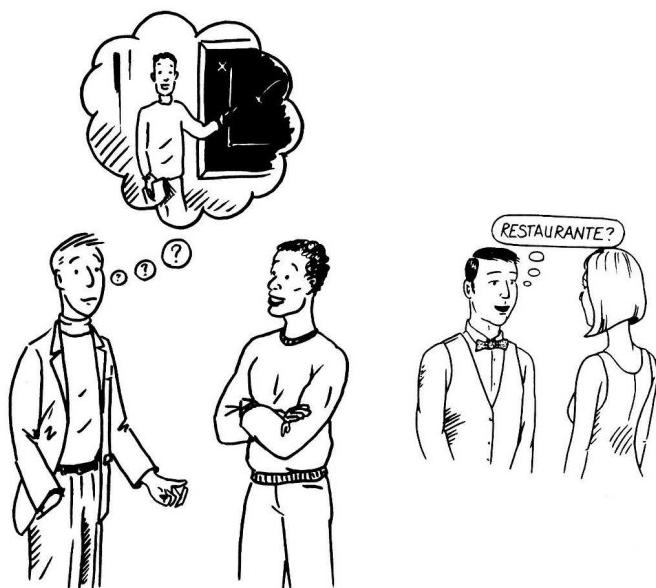
4



3. Q: ..... A: .....

4. Q: ..... A: .....

5



6

5. Q: ..... A: .....

6. Q: ..... A: .....

## What sort of person are you?

**Sou ...**

I am ...

**vivo/a (or: alegre)**

lively

**dinâmico/a**

dynamic

**ambicioso/a**

ambitious

**falador/a**

talkative

**trabalhador/a**

hardworking

**eficiente**

efficient

**honesto/a**

honest

**desonesto/a**

dishonest

**calmo/a**

quiet

**preguiçoso/a**

lazy

## The personal infinitive

We are now familiar with infinitives such as **ser**, **ter** and **comer**. Unique to the Portuguese language is another infinitive called the personal or inflected infinitive which is a ‘personalized’ infinitive with personal or individual endings. It is simple to form. Take any infinitive and add the endings:

**-es -mos -em**

In fact, there are only three endings to learn.

*Example: The personal infinitive of beber:*

**beber**

I drink (my drinking)

**beberes**

you drink (your drinking)

**beber**

he/she drinks, you drink

**(his/her/your drinking)**

(his/her/your drinking)

**bebermos**

we drink (our drinking)

**beberem**

they, you (pl) drink

**(their/your drinking)**

The personal infinitive generally follows a preposition.

## Uses of the personal infinitive

1 It helps to avoid confusion about who is being referred to. Here the ordinary infinitive is used:

**depois de partir** = after (I, he, she, etc.?) left. *Who* exactly left? You, him, them? Use of the personal infinitive helps to specify who it was who left:

**depois de partirem** = after *they* left  
(lit.: after *their* leaving)

### Verás as montanhas ao chegares

You will see the mountains when you arrive  
(lit.: upon *your* arriving)

2 The personal infinitive can avoid the use of the subjunctive if a preposition replaces the conjunction.

**Ele vai telefonar antes que parta** (subjunctive)  
He is going to telephone before he leaves

**Ele vai telefonar antes de partir** (personal infinitive)

In impersonal expressions such as **É preciso** (it is needed) or **É pena** (it is a pity) and verbs such as **lamentar** (to be sorry) the conjunction **que** does not need to be replaced by a preposition:

**É preciso que estejam lá** (subjunctive)  
They must be there

**É preciso estarem lá** (personal infinitive)  
They must be there

**É pena que ela não esteja aqui** (subjunctive)  
It is a pity that she is not here

**É pena ela não estar aqui** (personal infinitive)  
It is a pity that she is not here

**Lamento que ela tenha tantos problemas** (subjunctive)  
I'm sorry that she has so many problems

**Lamento ela ter tantos problemas** (personal infinitive)  
I'm sorry that she has so many problems

## Dialogue 2

### As férias

*At the conference, talk turns to how the four spent their holidays last year and what their plans are for this year*

HUGO: Nas minhas férias do ano passado eu fui ao Canadá. Vi as Cataratas do Niágara. Eram lindas! Passei lá o dia inteiro ...

SARAH: Eu também vi as Cataratas há três anos!

ERIC: No ano passado eu queria ir aos Estados Unidos. Mas, infelizmente, tive de cancelar por razões de trabalho.

MARIA: Não pode ir lá este verão? Este ano eu gostaria de visitar a França ... No ano passado passei as minhas férias na África do Sul.

### Vocabulary

<b>o ano passado</b>	last year	<b>vi</b>	I saw
<b>fui</b>	I went	<b>visitei</b>	I visited
<b>passei</b>	I spent	<b>eram lindas</b>	they were lovely
<b>há três anos</b>	three years ago	<b>não pode?</b>	can't you?
<b>queria ir</b>	I wanted to go	<b>tive de cancelar</b>	I had to cancel
<b>gostaria de visitar</b>	I'd like to visit	<b>África do Sul</b>	South Africa
<b>passei lá o dia inteiro</b>	I spent the whole day there		
<b>por razões de trabalho</b>	for work reasons		

### Exercise 7

Translate the following passage:

**No ano passado passei férias maravilhosas na praia. O tempo estava muito bom e eu fiquei<sup>1</sup> numa pensão muito perto da praia. Gostei imensamente do mar e de todas as pessoas que encontrei. Espero regressar lá um dia.**

<sup>1</sup> **fiquei** and not **ficei**. To retain the 'hard c' sound (like the English 'k'), the **c** changes to **qu**. (This is an example of an orthography-changing verb, i.e. one which alters its spelling to maintain its original sound.) The rest of the verb in the preterite is as normal:

**fiquei ficaste ficou ficamos ficaram**

**Vocabulary**

<b>na praia</b>	on the beach
<b>férias maravilhosas</b>	great holiday
<b>o tempo estava muito bom</b>	the weather was really good
<b>fiquei</b>	I stayed
<b>o mar</b>	the sea
<b>muito perto de</b>	really near
<b>gostei imensamente de ...</b>	I really liked ...
<b>todas as pessoas que encontrei</b>	all the people I met
<b>espero regressar lá um dia</b>	I hope to go back one day

**Exercise 8**

With the help of the additional vocabulary given below, can you create a short paragraph in Portuguese similar to that in Exercise 7 for each of the following holiday-makers:

- 1 Last year I had a great holiday in the mountains. The weather was very bad and I stayed in a youth hostel.
- 2 Last year I had a great holiday in the city of Paris. The weather was good and I stayed in a hotel.
- 3 Last year I had a great holiday in the lakes. The weather was great and I stayed in a **pousada** (deluxe inn).

**Vocabulary**

<b>nas montanhas</b>	in the mountains
<b>nos lagos</b>	at the lakes
<b>na cidade de Paris</b>	in the city of Paris
<b>péssimo</b>	awful
<b>ótimo</b>	great
<b>bom</b>	good
<b>muito ruim</b>	very bad
<b>o hotel</b>	hotel
<b>a pousada</b>	<i>pousada</i> (deluxe inn)
<b>a pousada da juventude/</b>	
<b>o albergue da juventude</b>	youth hostel

**Hints for reading in a foreign language**

- 1 First read through, trying to get the general gist.
- 2 Use any extra information which might be present, for example, illustrations and subheadings.
- 3 Try not to use the dictionary at first but do try to guess the general meaning by focusing first on words which seem similar in English. For instance, you might have already noticed similarities between words which end in '-tion' in English and -ção in Portuguese:

<b>condição</b>	condition
<b>ambição</b>	ambition

or words ending in '-able' in English and -ável in Portuguese:

<b>confortável</b>	comfortable
<b>deplorável</b>	deplorable

- 4 If a particular word in Portuguese looks familiar but you can't remember the English equivalent, try saying it out loud. For instance **condição**, when pronounced, sounds like: 'condeesow'. This should then lead you to the English word 'condition'.

**Exercise 9**

Below is a list of words in English and a list in Portuguese. Using the above information can you provide in column 1 the Portuguese equivalent and in column 2, the English equivalent. The first two have been done for you.

1	2
horrible	( <b>horrível</b> )
deplorable	<b>nação</b> (nation)
variable	<b>lamentável</b>
solution	<b>incomparável</b>
petition	<b>perfeição</b>
	<b>confortável</b>

**A word of caution ...**

Unfortunately, this 'system' won't work for every word! For example, the English word 'marketable' translates as **comercializável**.

## Prefixes

The English ‘un-’ (*unhappy, unfortunately, etc.*) translates as the following:

<b>in-</b> as in:	<b>inopportuno</b>	untimely
<b>im-</b> as in:	<b>impensável</b>	unthinkable
<b>ir-</b> as in:	<b>irrepetível</b>	unrepeatable
<b>des-</b> as in:	<b>desfavorável</b>	unfavourable

English ‘in-’ translates as:

<b>in-</b> as in:	<b>incidente</b>	incident
	<b>incapacidade</b>	incapacity

### Exercise 10

Now try to translate the following without the aid of your dictionary:

**incessante, impulsivo, impossível, impulso, impreciso, imperceptível, imparcial, impetuoso**

### Exercise 11

Read this short passage then answer the questions which follow:

**Para ir à fábrica vou de trem até Bauru e depois pego um ônibus para a cidade. Esta manhã peguei um táxi. Este ano pretendo ir ao Recife. Mas, possivelmente, só irei lá no fim do verão.**

- 1 How does the writer get to the factory?
- 2 What did he do this morning?
- 3 What are his holiday plans and when is he going?

## Vocabulary

<b>até Bauru</b>	to Bauru
<b>pego</b>	I catch
<b>peguei</b>	I caught
<b>no fim do verão</b>	at the end of summer
<b>só irei lá</b>	I will only go
<b>pretendo ir</b>	I intend to go

## How much can you remember?

- 1 Can you give the Portuguese for:

my favourite drink, my favourite hobby, lawyer, librarian, profession

- 2 Write out the future subjunctive of **falar** ‘to speak’.

- 3 Give three ways of refusing an invitation and three ways of accepting.

- 4 In Portuguese, how would you introduce yourself, ask someone their name and where they are from?

- 5 Name four qualities you consider yourself to have.

- 6 What do these translate as?

**um convite, eu não dirijo, o congresso, trabalhador, calmo, eficiente, assistir a**

- 7 Translate into Portuguese:

Last year I visited Belgium. The weather was great. I stayed in a hotel near the beach. It was very comfortable. I'd like to go to Cuba this year. Two years ago I went to Greece.

# 12 Exmo. Senhor . . .

**Dear Sir . . .**

In this lesson you will learn about:

- setting up a business meeting by phone
- writing formal and informal letters
- office equipment
- business terms

## Dialogue 1 *Marcar uma reunião*

*Sr Dias calls Sr Silva on his mobile phone (*o seu celular*)*

- Sr DIAS:** Alô?  
**SECRETÁRIA:** Alô. Antônio Silva e Companhia Limitada, bom dia. Com quem gostaria de falar?  
**Sr DIAS:** Bom dia. Aqui fala Alberto Dias. Posso falar com o Sr Silva, por favor?  
**SECRETÁRIA:** Desculpe, mas o Sr Silva ainda não chegou.  
**Sr DIAS:** Oh, que azar! Tenho um assunto urgente a tratar com ele e preciso de marcar uma reunião juntamente com o meu sócio.  
**SECRETÁRIA:** Está bem. Eu posso marcar a reunião. Pode ser amanhã às três horas?  
**Sr DIAS:** Muito bem. Então, fica combinado. Até amanhã às três.

## Vocabulary

<b>O celular</b>	cell/mobile phone
<b>companhia limitada</b>	limited company
<b>(ele) ainda não chegou</b>	has not arrived yet
<b>que azar!</b>	what bad luck!
<b>marcar uma reunião</b>	to arrange/fix up an appointment
<b>preciso de</b>	I need/have to
<b>o sócio</b>	partner
<b>juntamente com</b>	together with
<b>Eu posso marcar a reunião</b>	I can arrange the meeting
<b>pode ser?</b>	does it suit/is it convenient?
<b>então, fica combinado</b>	so, that's agreed
<b>Tenho um assunto urgente a tratar com ele</b>	I have an urgent matter to discuss with him

## **Talking on the phone**

Revise the section 'Making a call from a phone box' in Lesson 8. Remember, when speaking on the phone, to use the following:

<i>(you are the caller)</i>	<i>(you are the recipient of the call)</i>
<b>Alô? (Pt Está?)</b>	<b>Alô (Pt Estou)</b>
(Hello?/Are you there?)	(Hello/I'm here)

Once you get through:

<b>Aqui fala ...</b>	This is ...
or simply <b>fala ...</b> (name)	Can I speak to ...?
<b>Posso falar com ...</b> (name)?	Can you speak more slowly?
<b>Pode falar mais devagar?</b>	Do you speak English?
<b>Fala inglês?</b>	Sorry, I don't speak Portuguese
<b>Desculpe, eu não falo</b> <b>português muito bem</b>	very well
<b>Telefone mais tarde</b>	I'll phone later
<b>Gostaria de cancelar a minha</b> <b>reunião com ...</b>	I'd like to cancel my meeting with ...

## **Exercise 1**

Try to translate this short telephone conversation into Portuguese:

- JANE: Hello? Can I speak to the manager?  
 COMPANY: I'm afraid he hasn't come in yet. Is it urgent?

JANE: I'm sorry, can you speak more slowly please, I don't speak Portuguese very well.  
 COMPANY: Ah! Hold on. The manager has just arrived.

### Vocabulary

<b>Queria/posso falar com ...?</b>	Could/can I speak to?
<b>o gerente</b>	the manager
<b>É urgente?</b>	Is it urgent?
<b>não desligue</b>	hold on

### Exercise 2

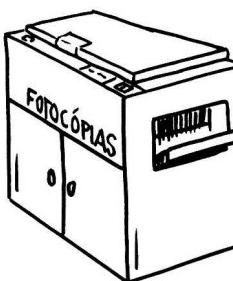
Below is a transcript of a telephone conversation. Owing to the poor line, however, parts of the conversation are indistinct. Using the vocabulary below, can you complete the missing spaces to find out what is being said?

Sr COELHO: ... ?  
 SECRETÁRIA: Alô.  
 Sr COELHO: Aqui fala o Sr Coelho. Posso falar ... o Sr Costa?  
 É muito ...  
 SECRETÁRIA: ... , mas o Sr Costa ... no Rio em negócios.  
 Sr COELHO: Rio! Que ...! Eu estou falando do Rio!  
 SECRETÁRIA: Qual ... o nome da sua ...?  
 Sr COELHO: Coelho e Irmão.  
 SECRETÁRIA: Não entendo. Está marcada na agenda uma ... para hoje no Rio ... o Senhor Costa e Coelho e Irmão.  
*(a moment later ...)*  
 Sr COELHO: Ah! Só um ... O Sr Costa já chegou!

entre	é	desculpe	urgente	alô	
com	azar	minuto	companhia	reunião	está

### Exercise 3

Below are some pieces of equipment you can find in an office. From the list below try to match the correct Portuguese word with the item it represents.



o disquete	o computador	o fax	o teclado
a máquina de escrever	o telefone	a máquina de xerox	

**Vocabulary**

<b>o computador</b>	computer
<b>a informática</b>	computing
<b>o software</b>	software
<b>o hardware</b>	hardware
<b>a tela (Pt o écran)</b>	screen (computer)
<b>a unidade de disquete</b>	disk drive
<b>o banco de dados</b>	database
<b>a fragmentadora/picotadora</b>	shredder
<b>o calculador</b>	calculator
<b>o arquivo</b>	file
<b>o líquido corretor</b>	correction fluid
<b>o papel</b>	paper
<b>os envelopes</b>	envelopes
<b>a caneta/o lápis</b>	pen/pencil
<b>o cartão de negócios</b>	business card
<b>homem/mulher de negócios</b>	business man/woman
<b>a viagem de negócios</b>	business trip

**Correspondence****Fax and memo**

<b>FAX</b>	
Para:	.....
Fax Número:	.....
De:	..... Fax Nº:
Data:	.... Ref: .....
No. de páginas:	.....

<b>MEMORANDO</b>	
Para:	.....
De:	.....
Data:	.....
Ref:	.....

**Vocabulary**

<b>para</b>	to
<b>para a atenção de</b>	for the attention of
<b>de</b>	from
<b>data</b>	date
<b>ref (referência)</b>	reference
<b>no. de páginas</b>	number of pages
<b>Posso enviar esta carta por fax/por e-mail?</b>	Can I fax/e-mail this letter?

**Letters****1 Formal business letters**

*English salutation      Portuguese salutation      Endings*

Dear Sir Dear Sirs Dear Madam Dear Mr (Lopes) Dear Mrs (Lopes)	<b>Exmo. Senhor</b> <b>Exmos. Senhores</b> <b>Exma. Senhora</b> <b>Exmo. Sr Lopes</b> <b>Exma. Sra Lopes</b>	<b>Subscrevo-me de V. Exa(s).,</b> <b>Atenciosamente</b> Yours faithfully or Yours sincerely (from one person)  or  <b>Subscrevemo-nos de V. Exa(s).,</b> <b>Atenciosamente</b> Yours faithfully or Yours sincerely (from more than one person)
Messrs	<b>Ilmos. Senhores</b>	<b>Subscrevemo-nos de V. Sas.,</b> <b>Atenciosamente</b>

## 2 Informal business letters

*English salutation*    *Portuguese  
salutation*

*Endings*

Dear Sir Dear Sirs Dear Madam Dear Sirs (lit.: Dear friends and sirs)	<b>Prezado Senhor</b> <b>Prezados Senhores</b> <b>Prezada Senhora</b> <b>Prezados Amigos</b> <b>e Senhores</b>	<b>Subscrevo-me</b> <b>de V. Sa(s).,</b> <b>Atenciosamente</b> Yours faithfully or Yours sincerely (from one person) or <b>Subscrevemo-nos</b> <b>de V. Sa(s).,</b> <b>Atenciosamente</b> Yours faithfully or Yours sincerely (from more than one person)
Dear José Dear Ester	<b>Caro José</b> <b>Cara Ester</b>	

### Notes

- 1 **Exmo./Exma./Exmos./Exmas.** = **Excelentíssimo/a/os/as** = Most excellent Sir/Madam, etc.
- 2 In Brazil other equivalents of **Exmo.**, etc. are:

**Ilmo./Ilma./Ilmos./Ilmas.** = **Ilustríssimo/a/os/as**

= Most Illustrious Sir/Madam, etc.

- 3 **V. Exa(s).** = **Vossa(s) Excelênci(a)s** = Your Excellency(ies)
- 4 **V. Sa(s).** = **Vossa(s) Senhoria(s)** = Your Lordship(s)
- 5 **Ilmos.** = Messrs, is used in both Portugal and Brazil
- 6 **Cordialmente** can replace **Atenciosamente**

## Addresses

### 1 Formal:

In Brazil

Ilma. Sra. Isabel Nunes  
Av. Princesa Isabel, 370  
Apto. 62 – 6º andar  
22011-010 Rio de Janeiro RJ  
Brasil

In Portugal

Exmo. Sr. J. Simões  
Rua do Brasil, 61-3º esq  
3900 Condeixa  
Portugal

### Notes

- 1 Normally after the number of the street, lane, etc., you will see:  
**1º 2º 3º andar** = 1st 2nd 3rd floor, etc. or **térreo** (ground floor)  
**apto** = **apartamento** apartment  
**r/c** = **rés do chão** ground floor (Pt)  
**dto** = **direito** right (Pt)  
**esq** = **esquerdo** left (Pt)
- 2 The street name comes first, followed by the number
- 3 The post code comes before the city name
- 4 After the city name comes the state name in full or abbreviated

**2 Informal:**

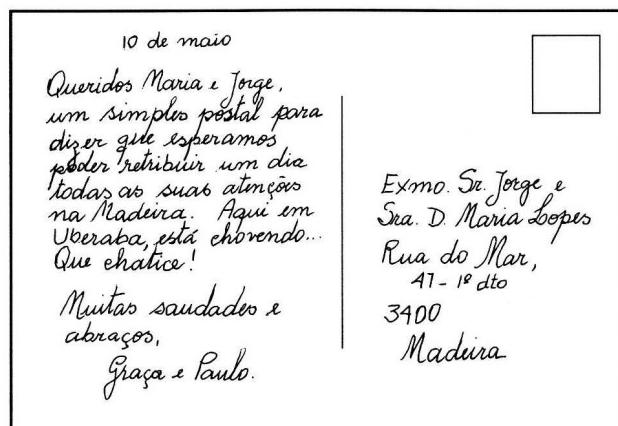
In both Portugal and Brazil

Sr. Jorge Gomes  
Praça dos Pombais, 1 r/c dto  
7654 Caia  
Portugal

Sra. D.I. Castro  
Beco das Flores, 6  
8874 Campo Grande  
Angola

**Um postal**

A postcard ...

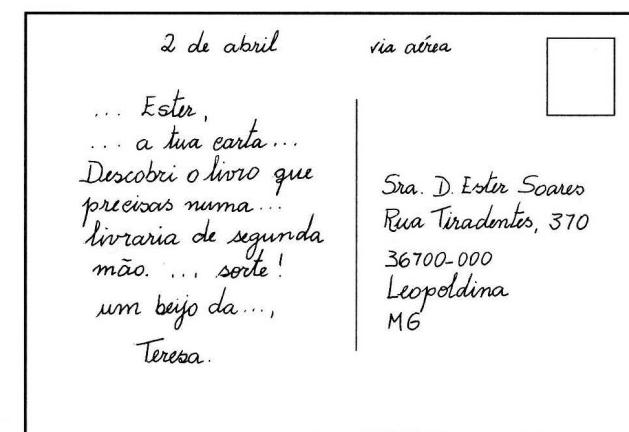
**Vocabulary**

<b>Sr. e Sra. D.</b>	Mr and Mrs
<b>D. = Dona</b>	Mrs or Miss
<b>Querido/a/os/as</b>	Dear ... (informal)
<b>esperamos poder</b>	we hope to be able
<b>retribuir um dia</b>	to pay you back one day
<b>todas as suas atenções</b>	all your kindness
<b>aqui em Uberaba</b>	here in Uberaba
<b>está chovendo</b>	it's raining
<b>que chatice!</b>	what a bind/pain/nuisance!
<b>muitas saudades e abraços</b>	missing you and sending much love
<b>beijos</b>	kisses/hugs
<b>cumprimentos</b>	best wishes

Note: for a more courteous approach, although this is an informal postcard, use the **Exmo.** form.

**Exercise 4**

Now fill in the blanks in this postcard:



pequena	ontem	que	recebi	amiga	querida
---------	-------	-----	--------	-------	---------

**Exercise 5**

Below is an example of a business letter in Portuguese which has been partially translated into English. Firstly, try to fill in the missing words in English then answer the questions which follow. A full translation of the letter is at the end of the lesson.

**A C Brito & Cia. Lda.**  
**Avenida Liberdade**  
**São Paulo**

n/Ref: CJK/LN  
v/Ref: L0098

São Paulo, 14 de Julho de 2001

Exmos. Senhores  
Costa & Cia. Lda.  
Rua Visconde de Pirajá, 56  
22410-003 Rio de Janeiro  
RJ

Prezados Amigos e Senhores,

Acusamos o recebimento da v/estimada carta de 4 do corrente na qual V. Sas. nos pedem para organizarmos uma reunião para discutir as nossas necessidades de novas encomendas dos vossos produtos.

Apresentamos nossas desculpas por esta demora em vos responder. Contudo, achamos que podemos marcar uma reunião para o dia 25 do mês e enviaremos por fax a V. Sas. a confirmação desta data.

Entretanto, aguardando o prazer da v/visita a esta cidade, subscrevemo-nos, com os nossos mais respeitosos cumprimentos.

De V. Sas.,  
Atenciosamente

*Diretor Adjunto*  
acbrito@bol.com.br

*Dear Sirs*

*We thank you for your ... of the 4th inst. in which you ask us to ... a meeting in order ... our need for new orders of your ...*

*We ... for the ... in replying. However, we think that we can ... a meeting for the 25 of the ... and we will send ... of this ... by fax.*

*In the meantime, we look forward to the ... of your visit to this ... Kind regards,*

*Yours sincerely*

*Assistant Director*

- 1 The letter is in response to one sent by Costa & Co. on 8 July – true or false?
- 2 Costa & Co. want to arrange a meeting to buy products from Brito & Co. – true or false?
- 3 What does Brito & Co. apologize for?
- 4 What will Brito & Co. do to confirm the meeting?

### **More on business letters ...**

Some useful phrases:

**Queiram aceitar nossas desculpas ...**  
Please accept my apologies ...

**Solicitamos-lhe o favor de ...**  
Please be so kind as to ...

**Agradeço-lhe que se digne ...**  
I should be very grateful if you would ...

**Sinto muito comunicar-lhe que ...**  
I regret to have to inform you that ...

**Envie-mo quanto antes ...**  
Please send me as soon as possible ...

**De acordo com ...**  
In accordance with ...

**Exercise 6**

Read the following dialogue and then answer the questions which follow:

- COELHO:** Sei que o senhor está interessado em utensílios de metal para uso caseiro. Temos vários modelos de panelas e talheres de aço inoxidável.
- PEREIRA:** Sim. Estou de fato interessado. Trouxe-me um catálogo?
- COELHO:** Trouxe. Esses talheres são de primeira qualidade. E aqui tem as nossas listas de preços também.

**Vocabulary**

<b>estar interessado em</b>	to be interested in
<b>utensílios de metal</b>	metal utensils
<b>para uso caseiro</b>	for domestic use
<b>vários modelos</b>	various models
<b>panelas e talheres de aço inoxidável</b>	pans and stainless steel cutlery
<b>Trouxe-me um catálogo?</b>	Did you bring me a catalogue?
<b>de primeira qualidade</b>	of the finest quality
<b>listas de preços</b>	price lists

- 1 What does Sr Coelho sell?
- 2 Is Sr Pereira interested in his products?
- 3 Sr Pereira asks if Sr Coelho has brought – what?
- 4 Sr Coelho points out a certain product in the catalogue. What does he say about it?
- 5 What else has he brought?

**Business terms**

<b>a gestão</b>	administration
<b>o serviço pós-venda</b>	after-sales service
<b>o custo médio</b>	average cost
<b>o saldo</b>	balance
<b>o especulador</b>	bear/bull (market)
<b>o mercado negro</b>	black market
<b>anular</b>	to cancel

**os fluxos de fundos/de caixa**

<b>a concorrência</b>	cash flow
<b>o concorrente</b>	competition
<b>a procura (de consumo)</b>	competitor
<b>o contrato</b>	(consumer) demand
<b>redigir um contrato</b>	contract
<b>o cálculo de custos</b>	to draw up a contract
<b>o controle de crédito</b>	costing
<b>os clientes</b>	credit control
<b>o acordo</b>	customers
<b>fechar o negócio</b>	deal
<b>a entrega</b>	to strike a deal
<b>a data de entrega/o prazo de entrega</b>	delivery
<b>desenvolver</b>	date of delivery
<b>(zona de) desenvolvimento</b>	to develop
<b>o desconto</b>	development (area)
<b>expedir</b>	discount
<b>o distribuidor</b>	to dispatch
<b>os gêneros</b>	distributor
<b>a sede social/a matriz</b>	goods
<b>o importador</b>	head office
<b>importar</b>	importer
<b>investir</b>	to import
<b>o investimento</b>	to invest
<b>o empréstimo</b>	investment
<b>emprestar</b>	loan
<b>a gerência/direção</b>	to lend
<b>o diretor geral (Pt o director geral)</b>	management
<b>o marketing</b>	managing director
<b>a análise de mercados/a pesquisa de mercado</b>	marketing
<b>a reunião</b>	market research
<b>as atas (Pt as actas)</b>	meeting
<b>negociar</b>	minutes
<b>negociável</b>	to negotiate
<b>a despesa</b>	negotiable
<b>a percentagem</b>	outlay
<b>produzir</b>	percentage
<b>o produtor</b>	to produce
<b>o ganho/o lucro</b>	producer
<b>a rentabilidade</b>	profit
<b>a proposta</b>	profitability

a quota	quota
o recibo	receipt
reembolsar	reimburse
o relatório	report
a varejo (Pt a retalho)	at retail
o varejista (Pt o retalhista)	retailer
as vendas	sales
o contrato de compra e venda	sales contract
o gerente de vendas	sales manager
a amostra	sample
a assinatura	signature
a pequena empresa	small firm
as estatísticas	statistics
o estoque	stock
a Bolsa	stock market
o fornecedor/o abastecedor	supplier
a oferta e a procura	supply and demand
os objetivos (Pt os objectivos)	targets
a feira industrial	trade fair
a transação (Pt a transacção)	transaction
o transporte	transport
o movimento	turnover
o subdesenvolvimento	underdevelopment
o ICM (Pt o IVA)	VAT
a mão-de-obra/a força de trabalho	workforce

### Exercise 7

Can you translate the following passages into English and then answer the questions which follow. Try not to look at the vocabulary until the very last minute!

#### A língua portuguesa

**A língua portuguesa é falada não só no Brasil, mas também em Portugal (na Europa), na Guiné-Bissau, Angola, Moçambique e nas ilhas de Cabo Verde e São Tomé e Príncipe (em África), e Goa, Damão e Diu (na Índia), Macau (na China) e Timor.**

**O português é mais falado do que o francês. A língua portuguesa é a quinta língua mais falada no mundo. Cerca de 180 milhões de pessoas falam português.**

- 1 Portuguese is only spoken in Brazil and Portugal. True or false?
- 2 Are there more French speakers than Portuguese speakers?
- 3 Approximately how many people speak Portuguese?
- 4 Portuguese is the seventh most widely spoken language in the world. True or false?

### Vocabulary

a língua	language
é falada	is spoken
não só no Brasil	not only in Brazil
mas também	but also
ilhas	islands
Europa	Europe
é mais falado do que o francês	is more spoken than French
a quinta língua mais falada no mundo	the fifth most spoken language in the world
cerca de	around

### Translation of the letter from Brito & Co.

Dear Sirs

We thank you for your letter of the 4th inst. in which you ask us to organize a meeting in order to discuss our need for new orders of your products.

We apologize for the delay in replying. However, we think that we can arrange a meeting for the 25th of the month and we will send confirmation of this date by fax.

In the meantime, we look forward to the pleasure of your visit to this city.

Kind regards,

Yours sincerely

Assistant Director  
acbrito@bol.com.br

# 13 A Internet

## The Internet

In this lesson you will learn about:

- accessing the Internet
- corresponding by e-mail
- the uses of a mobile phone
- revision – some exercises!

### Exercise 1

#### No computador (At the computer)

At home, Joana is working on her new computer. Can you place the correct expressions from the box below into the gaps in the text to discover what she intends to do whilst online.

**Em primeiro lugar, vou \_\_\_\_\_ para \_\_\_\_\_.**

**Depois \_\_\_\_\_ para conferir o meu saldo.**

**Depois disso, \_\_\_\_\_. Ah! Não há mensagens ...**

**Vou enviar \_\_\_\_\_ para a minha irmã que faz aniversário hoje.**

**Finalmente, vou \_\_\_\_\_ e reservar um hotel em Salvador.**

vou checar o meu e-mail  
entrar na Net  
visitar um site de turismo

digitar a minha senha  
um cartão virtual  
vou ao site do meu banco

### Vocabulary

<b>em primeiro lugar</b>	firstly
<b>digitar a minha senha<sup>1</sup></b>	key in my password
<b>entrar na Net<sup>2</sup></b>	to access the Net
<b>depois</b>	next
<b>depois disso</b>	after that
<b>ir ao site / visitar o site</b>	to go/ to visit the site
<b>o site do banco</b>	the bank site
<b>conferir o saldo</b>	to check the balance
<b>checar o meu e-mail</b>	to check my e-mail
<b>(in full: o correio eletrônico</b>	electronic mail)
<b>não há mensagens</b>	there are no messages
<b>(also: não tenho mails</b>	I don't have any mail)
<b>enviar um cartão virtual</b>	to send a virtual card
<b>um site de turismo</b>	a tourism information site
<b>reservar um hotel</b>	to book a hotel room

<sup>1</sup> also: a minha password a minha palavra-chave (Pt) password

<sup>2</sup> also: entrar na rede



**Exercise 2**

Imagine you are Joana. In an effort to remember your movements on the computer, you have written down each step. These steps are written in English below. Try to translate them into Portuguese using the Preterite tense. (See **Lesson 3** for an explanation on how to form the Preterite).

- 1 Firstly I keyed in my password \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Next I went to my bank site to check my balance \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 After that I checked my mail \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 I sent a virtual card to my sister \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Finally, I visited a tourism information site \_\_\_\_\_

**Exercise 3** 

Read the following passage about Internet usage in Brazil and see if you can answer the questions which follow.

**Com mais de 4 milhões de assinantes, a Internet no Brasil atrai milhares de internautas por dia. A maioria dos usuários visita os sites da internet à noite, quando o preço da ligação telefônica é mais baixo. Depois das dez da noite, as salas de bate-papo ficam lotadas e a rede fica mais lenta.**

**Vocabulary**

<b>atrai</b> (verbo atrair)	it attracts (verb to attract)
<b>internauta</b> (m/f)	the internet user (analogy of astronaut)
<b>a ligação telefônica</b>	telephone call
<b>preço mais baixo</b>	lower price
<b>as salas de bate-papo</b> (also: <b>salas de chat</b> )	the chat rooms
<b>lotadas</b>	crowded
<b>a rede</b>	the net
<b>mais lenta</b>	slower

- 1 How many subscribers of the Internet are there in Brazil?
- 2 Can you pick out the word for “users” in Portuguese?
- 3 What factor contributes to so many people in Brazil using the Internet at night?
- 4 True or False: After 10pm it is faster to access and browse the Internet although the chat rooms are crowded.

**Exercise 4** 

Many expressions connected with computers and the Internet in Portuguese are similar, or exactly the same, as those in English. Can you match up the Portuguese expression on the left with its correct translation in English on the right?

<b>a(s) sala(s) de chat</b>	the Net
<b>o scanner</b>	program
<b>a Tecnologia de Informação</b>	online banking
<b>o banco online</b>	to surf the Internet
<b>o browser</b>	online shopping
<b>o hacker<sup>3</sup></b>	chat room(s)
<b>o provedor da Internet</b>	browser
<b>navegar na Internet<sup>4</sup></b>	to search
<b>o Shopping online</b>	scanner
<b>a Net (or: a rede)</b>	Information Technology
<b>o modem</b>	hacker
<b>buscar</b>	search engine
<b>o engenho de busca</b>	modem
<b>o programa</b>	Internet Provider

<sup>3</sup> also: **o pirata informático** computer pirate

<sup>4</sup> also: **surfar na Net**

**Exercise 5**

In Rio de Janeiro, Juliana is sending an e-mail to her company's overseas office in Portugal. The e-mail has been translated into English below – but not all of it! With the aid of the partial translation and the vocabulary that follows, can you fill in the blanks to decipher why Juliana is writing to Ester? You will find a full translation of the e-mail in the exercise key.

**De:** Juliana Ramos@digibanco.com.br  
**Para:** Ester Soares@digimais.com.pt  
**Enviado:** Sexta-feira, 24 de Agosto de 2001 18.20  
**Assunto:** Vídeo Conferência

Querida Ester

Poderia por favor organizar uma vídeo conferência entre os escritórios de Lisboa e Rio para quinta-feira, 6 de Setembro, a fim de discutirmos a estratégia de vendas para o ano que vem?

A propósito, muito obrigada pela página da Web que você construiu para o escritório do Rio – parece muito melhor! Agora, é tão fácil para entrar e download a informação, e os gráficos são excelentes!

Conforme pedido, envio como attach a lista dos nossos fornecedores de DVD na América do Sul.

Um grande abraço  
 Juliana Ramos  
 Diretora Executiva

*Translation:*

*Dear Ester*

\_\_\_\_\_ a video conference for \_\_\_\_\_,  
 between the Lisbon and Rio \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ next year's  
 \_\_\_\_\_?

By the way, thank you for \_\_\_\_\_ you built \_\_\_\_\_  
 – it looks much better! Now it is so \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_  
 and \_\_\_\_\_ information, and the graphics are excellent!

As requested, \_\_\_\_\_ the list of \_\_\_\_\_ in  
 South America.

All the best,  
 Juliana Ramos  
 Sales Executive

### Vocabulary

<b>Enviar um e-mail</b>	to send an e-mail
<b>enviado</b>	sent
<b>assunto</b>	subject
<b>organizar</b>	to set up
<b>os escritórios</b>	offices
<b>entrar</b> (also: <b>acessar</b> )	to access
<b>a fim de</b>	in order to
<b>construir uma página da Web</b>	to build a Web page
<b>download (a informação)</b>	to download (information)
<b>envio como attach</b>	I attach
<b>enviar como attach</b>	to send an attachment
(also: <b>enviar um attachment</b> )	
<b>os nossos fornecedores</b>	our suppliers

### O email E-mail

(a) If you have the recordings, listen to this Brazilian e-mail address being read aloud:

carolinaribeiro@bol.com.br “carolinaribeiro arroba bol ponto com ponto br”

(b) Following the same pattern, now try to read aloud this Brazilian e-mail address. You will find the correct sequence at the bottom of the page

marcelovargas@dialdata.com.br

### Dialogue 1

#### O shopping online

Dora chats about the merits of online shopping with a work colleague, Eduardo.

EDUARDO: No fim de semana fui a quatro livrarias diferentes e nenhuma delas tinha o livro que eu queria. No fim, tive que o encomendar. Mas que perda de tempo!

(b) ‘marcelovargas arroba dialdata ponto com ponto br’

- DORA: Eu também fui às compras. Comprei um CD para dar à minha amiga de presente de aniversário e um bouquet de flores para a minha tia que está no hospital – tudo isto sem necessidade de sair de casa.
- EDUARDO: Ah, já sei ... você usou o shopping online! ... Mas é seguro fornecer os detalhes do seu cartão de crédito pela internet?
- DORA: Ah sim, é cem por cento garantido. Tenho o e-card, que é um cartão exclusivo para compras na Internet. Nesta semana eu até reservei um vôo para Salvador online. É super prático!

### Vocabulary

<b>No fim de semana</b>	at the weekend
<b>as livrarias</b>	bookshops
<b>nenhuma delas</b>	none of them
<b>tive que o encomendar</b>	I had to order it
<b>fui às compras</b>	I went shopping
<b>comprei</b>	I bought
<b>sem necessidade de sair de casa</b>	without setting foot outside
<b>Ah, já sei ...</b>	Ah, now I see ...
<b>seguro</b>	safe
<b>fornecer</b>	to provide
<b>os detalhes</b>	the details
<b>cem por cento garantido</b>	one hundred per cent guaranteed
<b>exclusivo</b>	exclusive
<b>até reservei um vôo</b>	I even booked a flight

### Exercise 6

With the help of the vocabulary in Dialogue 1, can you translate the following sentences into Portuguese:

- 1 He ordered 5 books online
- 2 She buys all her CDs on the Internet
- 3 They provide their credit card details
- 4 You booked a flight to Salvador online

### A World Wide Web The World Wide Web

If you have access to the Internet, why not try looking at the following Brazilian sites, available on 'A World Wide Web'. (In Portuguese, this translates as '**A Rede de Alcance Mundial**', hence **A World Wide Web**)

<a href="http://www.revistaveja.com.br">www.revistaveja.com.br</a>	for news on all things Brazilian
<a href="http://www.guiadepraias.com.br">www.guiadepraias.com.br</a>	for news on beaches and surfing
<a href="http://www.malasika.com.br">www.malasika.com.br</a>	for hints on shopping, exchange rates, etc
<a href="http://www.passeio.com.br">www.passeio.com.br</a>	for news on where to stay, tourism, etc
<a href="http://www.cetsp.com.br">www.cetsp.com.br</a>	for news on traffic
<a href="http://www.submarino.com.br">www.submarino.com.br</a>	virtual bookshop
<a href="http://www.radiobandeirantes.com.br">www.radiobandeirantes.com.br</a>	for news, music, etc
<a href="http://www.tvglobo.com.br">www.tvglobo.com.br</a>	main TV network in Brazil ( <b>Rede Globo</b> )

Some Brazilian newspapers to try:

Daily: (Diário)

<b>O Diário de Notícias</b>	<a href="http://www.diarionoticias.com.br">www.diarionoticias.com.br</a>
<b>O Dia</b>	<a href="http://www.odia.com.br">www.odia.com.br</a>
<b>O Globo</b>	<a href="http://www.oglobo.com.br">www.oglobo.com.br</a>
<b>Jornal do Brasil</b>	<a href="http://www.jornaldobrasil.com.br">www.jornaldobrasil.com.br</a>
<b>Gazeta Esportiva</b>	<a href="http://www.gazetaesportiva.com.br">www.gazetaesportiva.com.br</a>

Weekly: (Semanal)

<b>O Nacional</b>	<a href="http://www.onacional.com.br">www.onacional.com.br</a>
<b>Balcão</b>	<a href="http://www.balcao.com.br">www.balcao.com.br</a>

### Exercise 7

Which web site would you access if you wanted to:

- a) **ouvir as notícias**
- b) **reservar um quarto de hotel**
- c) **comprar livros**



### **Exercise 8**

- 1 Look at the following expressions in Portuguese relating to e-mail. Insert against each expression the correct English translation from the box below.

Digitar a sua password

---

enviar uma mensagem

---

enviar um attachment

---

ir checar o seu e-mail

---

não tenho mails

---

o meu endereço eletrônico

---

to send a message

to key in your password

I don't have any mail

to send an attachment

my e-mail address

to check your e-mail

- 2 Now, read the following sentence and try to find out what Alberto used his e-mail for on one special occasion.

**O ano passado, o Alberto enviou por e-mail um cartão de Natal virtual a todos os seus colegas de trabalho.**

### **Exercise 9**

Francisco is in the middle of a busy day at work. Read the passage below and see if you can answer the questions that follow.

**Francisco pega o celular<sup>5</sup> e consulta na base de dados dos seus clientes o nome da pessoa com quem tem a próxima entrevista. Depois da entrevista, ele consulta a agenda eletrônica e confirma que tem um almoço com um cliente importante na sexta que vem. Liga para a Churrascaria Brasil e reserva uma mesa para sexta-feira, às duas horas da tarde.**

- 1 Francisco wants to find out the name of the client with whom he has his next interview.  
How does he do this?
- 2 How does Francisco find out who he has a lunch appointment with later that week?
- 3 Finally, who does Francisco ring and for what reason?

<sup>5</sup> o telemóvel (Pt) mobile phone

### **Vocabulary**

<b>pegar o celular</b>	(he) picks up the mobile phone
<b>a base de dados</b>	database
<b>os clientes</b>	clients
<b>a próxima entrevista</b>	the next interview
<b>a agenda eletrônica</b>	electronic diary
<b>ligar para ...</b>	he dials/rings/calls ...
<b>a churrascaria</b>	restaurante specializing in barbecued dishes

### **Some more computer terms**

<b>a impressora</b>	printer
<b>a informática</b>	computing
<b>a janela</b>	window
<b>a memória</b>	memory
<b>clicar</b>	to click on
<b>o engenho de busca</b>	search engine
<b>download</b>	to download
<b>o arquivo</b>	document / file
<b>o CD-ROM</b>	CD-ROM
<b>o comércio eletrônico</b>	e-commerce

<b>o disco rígido</b>	hard disk
<b>o disquete</b>	floppy disk
<b>o DVD</b>	DVD
<b>o laptop / o palmtop</b>	laptop / palmtop
<b>o monitor</b>	monitor
<b>o PC</b>	PC
<b>o mouse</b>	mouse
<b>o vírus</b>	virus
<b>upload</b>	(to)upload

## How would you manage in these situations?

### 1 Based on Lessons 1 and 2:

- 1 You are in a café in Rio and have to call the waiter over and order a beer, a strong black coffee, a cake and a cheese sandwich.
- 2 You get talking to a stranger at the next table by asking him the time. You introduce yourself, tell him where you come from and what you do and ask where he is from. You tell him you like/dislike Rio/Brazil.

### 2 Based on Lessons 3 and 4:

- 1 You go into a hotel to ask for a room for three nights with a shower. To save time the clerk fills out the check-in form (**a ficha**) for you, asking: your name, age, date of birth and where you come from. What replies would you give?
- 2 Later you want to visit the centre of town but manage to lose your way. You stop someone and ask: ‘Excuse me, how do I get to the centre?’ You cannot understand their reply, however, so you ask them to please speak more slowly.
- 3 Later in the evening you go out for dinner. You call the waiter over and ask for a table for two. From the menu you choose: soup, chicken and salad and a bottle of white wine. When the meal is over you ask for the bill.

### 3 Based on Lessons 5 and 6:

- 1 You decide you need to buy a sweater as you forgot to pack one. You find a shop, go in and ask to see some sweaters, size 40. You decide you want a blue one and ask how much it is and can you try it on.
- 2 You want to visit the National Museum which is a little bit outside the centre of Rio. As you are in a hurry you hail a taxi. What do you tell the driver?
- 3 Later that day you decide to hire a car to see a bit more of the country. You want a small car for the week. Your next step is to buy petrol. You stop at a small petrol station and ask for a fill-up.

### 4 Based on Lessons 7 and 8:

- 1 You wake up the following day with a slight toothache and go to the local chemist's, asking if they have something for the pain.
- 2 Later, feeling much better, you go to the post office and ask for 16 stamps for the USA. You also need to change some traveller's cheques at a bank. Whilst you are there you ask what the exchange rate is.

### 5 Based on Lessons 9, 10 and 11:

- 1 You decide to go to see a play later in the week. Ask for two seats in the stalls and ask what time the play starts.
- 2 In the afternoon you go to see a film. Ask for two tickets. Before the film starts you order two beers.
- 3 Back at the hotel you get talking to a member of staff about where you went on holiday last year (to Italy) and where you are planning to go next year.
- 4 Whilst chatting you decide to mention that the TV in your room is not working and also that there are no towels.

# Reference grammar

## Nouns and gender

In Portuguese, nouns can be either masculine or feminine:

<b>casa</b> (f)	<b>homem</b> (m)	<b>moça</b> (f)	<b>urso</b> (m)
house	man	girl	bear

The ending of a noun gives a clue as to whether it is masculine or feminine. Nouns:

- 1 ending in **-o -im -om -um** are generally masculine.
- 2 ending in **-a -ã -gem -dade -ice -ez -ção -são** are generally feminine.

## Forming the feminine

If a word in the masculine form ends in **-o**, then remove this and add an **-a**:

<b>menino</b>	boy	<b>menina</b>	girl
---------------	-----	---------------	------

If the masculine noun ends in a consonant, add an **-a**:

<b>cantor</b> (m)	<b>cantora</b> (f)	singer
-------------------	--------------------	--------

If the masculine word already ends in an **-a** there is no change:

<b>jornalista</b>	journalist (both male and female)
-------------------	-----------------------------------

## Plural of nouns

- 1 Nouns ending in an unstressed vowel, add **-s**:

<b>mala</b>	<b>malas</b>
-------------	--------------

- 2 Nouns ending in **-r** or **-z**, add **-es**:

<b>vendedor</b>	<b>vendedores</b>
-----------------	-------------------

- 3 Nouns ending in an **-s** where the final syllable is stressed, add **-es**:

<b>país</b>	<b>países</b>
-------------	---------------

Where the last syllable is not stressed, there is no change:

<b>lápis</b>	<b>lápis</b>
--------------	--------------

- 4 Nouns ending in **-m** becomes **-ns**:

<b>homem</b>	<b>homens</b>
--------------	---------------

- 5 Nouns which end in **-ão** have three possibilities in the plural:

(a) <b>-ão</b> → <b>ões</b>	(the most likely possibility)
<b>coleção</b> <b>organização</b>	<b>coleções</b> <b>organizações</b>

(b) <b>-ão</b> → <b>-ães</b>	
<b>pão</b>	<b>pães</b>

(c) <b>-ão</b> → <b>-aos</b>	
<b>irmão</b>	<b>irmãos</b>

- 6 Nouns which end in **-il** drop the **-i** and add **-is**:

<b>móvel</b>	<b>móveis</b>	furniture
--------------	---------------	-----------

Words ending in **-il** have two possible endings: **-is** or **-eis**. This changes according to whether the **-il** is stressed. If stressed, add **-is**. If not stressed, add **-eis**:

stressed: <b>barril</b>	<b>barris</b>	barrel/s
unstressed: <b>fóssil</b>	<b>fósseis</b>	fossil/s

## Articles

The definite article – ‘the’

	(m)	(f)
(s)	<b>o</b>	<b>a</b>
(pl)	<b>os</b>	<b>as</b>

The definite article agrees in number and gender with the noun it represents.

<b>o livro</b>	the book	<b>os livros</b>	the books
<b>a mesa</b>	the table	<b>as mesas</b>	the tables

The indefinite article – ‘a, an’

	masc	fem
sing	<b>um</b>	<b>uma</b>
plural	<b>uns</b>	<b>umas</b>

The indefinite article also agrees with the noun it represents.

<b>um jornal</b>	a newspaper (m)	<b>uma revista</b>	a magazine (f)
------------------	-----------------	--------------------	----------------

## Adjectives

These agree in gender and number with the word to which they refer and usually follow this word. The feminine is formed by changing the **-o** on the masculine adjective to an **-a**:

<b>um filme chato</b>	a boring film
<b>uma peça chata</b>	a boring play

If the adjective ends in an **-r** then simply add an **-a**:

<b>falador</b> (m)	<b>faladora</b> (f)	chatty/talkative
--------------------	---------------------	------------------

## Plurals of adjectives

If the adjective ends in a vowel, add **-s**:

<i>masculine:</i>	<i>feminine:</i>
<b>honesto</b> (s) →	<b>honesta</b> (-o → -a)
<b>honestos</b> (pl) →	<b>honestas</b> (-os → -as)

If the adjective ends in an **-e**, simply add **-s**:

<b>triste</b> →	<b>tristes</b>	(both m and f)
-----------------	----------------	----------------

For other adjective plurals follow the rules for the plural of nouns.

## Demonstrative adjectives and pronouns

	<i>This</i> <i>These</i>	<i>That</i> <i>Those</i>	<i>That</i> <i>Those</i>
ms	<b>este</b>	<b>esse</b>	<b>aquele</b>
fs	<b>esta</b>	<b>essa</b>	<b>aquela</b>
mpl	<b>estes</b>	<b>esses</b>	<b>aqueles</b>
fpl	<b>estas</b>	<b>essas</b>	<b>aquelas</b>
	<b>isto</b>	<b>isso</b>	<b>aquilo</b>

## Possessive adjectives and pronouns

Singular:

	ms	fs	mpl	fpl
My, mine	<b>o meu</b>	<b>a minha</b>	<b>os meus</b>	<b>as minhas</b>
your	<b>o teu</b>	<b>a tua</b>	<b>os teus</b>	<b>as tuas</b>
his, her,	<b>o seu</b>	<b>a sua</b>	<b>os seus</b>	<b>as suas</b>
your				

Plural:

	ms	fs	mpl	fpl
our	<b>o nosso</b>	<b>a nossa</b>	<b>os nossos</b>	<b>as nossas</b>
your ( <b>vós</b> )	<b>o vosso</b>	<b>a vossa</b>	<b>os vossos</b>	<b>as vossas</b>
their,	<b>o seu</b>	<b>a sua</b>	<b>os seus</b>	<b>as suas</b>
your				

These possessive adjectives change according to the *object* referred to and not the owner of the object.

her car	<b>o seu carro</b>	their car	<b>o seu carro</b>
her pens	<b>as suas canetas</b>	his pens	<b>as suas canetas</b>
my books	<b>os meus livros</b>	my pens	<b>as minhas canetas</b>

## Personal pronouns

<b>eu</b>	I
<b>tu</b>	you (m + f)
<b>você</b>	you (m + f)
<b>o senhor</b>	you (m)
<b>a senhora</b>	you (f)
<b>ele</b>	he, it
<b>ela</b>	she, it
<b>nós</b>	we
<b>vocês</b>	you (mpl + fpl)
<b>os senhores</b>	you (mpl)
<b>as senhoras</b>	you (fpl)
<b>eles</b>	they (mpl)
<b>elas</b>	they (fpl)

These subject pronouns are often omitted in the Portuguese of Brazil as the verb ending gives information about who is being referred to. They can also be used for emphasis:

**O senhor Castro? Ele ainda não chegou.**

Mr Castro? He hasn't arrived yet (but the others have).

## Adverbs

Some common ones are those formed by adding **-mente** to the end of a feminine adjective.

*adverb*  
**duvidoso** (ms)   **duvidosa** (fs) → **duvidosamente** doubtfully

Where there is no change in the feminine adjective, such as those ending in **-e** or **-z**, simply add **-mente**.

*adverb*  
**feliz** (ms)      **feliz** (fs)      → **felizmente** happily

## Prepositions

Some common ones are:

<b>a</b>	to/at
<b>em</b>	in/on
<b>de</b>	of/from
<b>por</b>	by/through

<b>debaixo de</b>	under/below
<b>em cima de</b>	on top of
<b>longe de</b>	far from
<b>para</b>	for, to, towards

## Questions

Simply use a questioning tone in your voice:

<b>Ela conhece o Paulo</b>	She knows Paulo
<b>Ela conhece o Paulo?</b>	Does she know Paulo?

Following a question word such as **como**, **onde** or **quem**, the order of subject and verb changes as in English:

<b>O Paulo está em casa</b>	Paulo is at home
<b>Onde está o Paulo?</b>	Where is Paulo?

## Verbs

### The infinitive

This is the whole verb (= the English verb 'to run/buy', etc.). Portuguese has three types of verb groups or conjugations and these end in either **-ar**, **-er** or **-ir**. Examples:

**comprar** to buy    **decidir** to decide    **beber** to drink

### The personal infinitive

Portuguese has another infinitive which, as the name suggests, is a 'personalized' infinitive. It is very simple to form. Take any infinitive and add the endings:

**-es**   **-mos**   **-em**

There are only three endings to learn.

### Using the personal infinitive

1 To indicate more clearly the person being referred to:

**Depois de partires, o Jorge chegou**  
After you left (your leaving), Jorge arrived

- 2 As an alternative to the subjunctive in certain cases, by replacing the conjunction with a preposition:

**Estou a preparar uma refeição no caso que venha** (subjunctive)  
I'm preparing the dinner in case he comes

**Estou a preparar uma refeição no caso de vir**  
(personal infinitive)

### The present indicative

This tense is used to state (a) normal occurrences or (b) facts.

- (a) **A loja abre às nove horas** The shop opens at 9.00 a.m.  
(b) **Não como fruta** I don't eat fruit

The present indicative endings are added to the stem of the verb (minus the **-ar**, **-er**, **-ir** ending). Examples:

falar to speak	beber to drink	partir to leave
falo	bebo	parto
falas	bebês	partes
fala	bebê	parte
falamos	bebemos	partimos
falam	bebem	partem

### Irregular verbs

Do not follow the above pattern of 'regular' stem + endings. Some of the most frequently used irregular verbs are given at the end of this section.

### Orthography-changing verbs

These are verbs which change their spelling in order to maintain their original sound. Some examples:

- |                 |                               |
|-----------------|-------------------------------|
| c before e → qu | (fiquei – from <b>ficar</b> ) |
| c before o → ç  | (faço – from <b>fazer</b> )   |

### Radical-changing verbs

These are verbs which have changes to their 'root' or 'stem'. This occurs mostly to **-ir** verbs in the present indicative tense (and, as a result, in the present subjunctive tense). For example, in the **eu** part of the verb:

e → i	<b>mentir</b> to lie	<b>(eu) minto</b>
	<b>preferir</b> to prefer	<b>(eu) prefiro</b>
	<b>sentir</b> to feel	<b>(eu) sinto</b>

### The present continuous tense

This uses the verb **estar** (to be) + gerund. This tense is used for actions which are in progress and which have an air of continuity about them.

- |                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| <b>estamos falando</b> | we are talking<br>(i.e. we are <i>in the middle of</i> talking) |
| <b>estava chorando</b> | he was crying<br>(i.e. he was <i>in the process of</i> crying)  |

### The gerund

This is formed by removing the final **-r** of any infinitive and adding **-ndo** and is the equivalent of the English present participle '-ing' in 'running', 'eating', etc.:

**dançando** dancing      **cantando** singing

**Estar + a + infinitive** is another way to form the present continuous tense. This method is more common in Portugal: **estou a comer** I am eating.

### The passive

This is formed using either the verb **ser** or **estar** + past participle and is the equivalent of 'was/were':

**O livro foi escrito por Jorge Amado (foi** from verbo **ser** = action)  
The book was written by Jorge Amado.

**O livro estava escrito em inglês (estava** from verbo **estar** = state)  
The book was written in English

### Preterite tense

This is used for actions in the past which are complete:

**Ontem comprei um par de sapatos**  
Yesterday I bought a pair of shoes

To form, remove the **-ar**, **-er** or **-ir** from any regular verb and add:

- |                |                             |
|----------------|-----------------------------|
| for -ar verbs: | <b>ei aste ou amos aram</b> |
| for -er verbs: | <b>i este eu emos eram</b>  |
| for -ir verbs: | <b>i iste iu imos iram</b>  |

### **Imperfect indicative**

This past tense is used for events in the past which have no exact time limits, or an habitual action in the past ('he used to ... every summer').

To form, remove the **-ar**, **-er** and **-ir** endings from the three verb conjugations and add:

**-ar** verbs: **-ava -avas -ava -ávamos -avam**  
**-er** and **-ir** verbs: **-ia -ias -ia -íamos -iam**

There are four irregular verbs in this tense:

<b>ser</b>	to be	<b>era eras era éramos eram</b>
<b>ter</b>	to have	<b>tinha tinhas tinha tínhamos tinham</b>
<b>vir</b>	to come	<b>vinha vinhas vinha vínhamos vinham</b>
<b>pôr</b>	to put	<b>punha punhas punha púnhamos punham</b>

### **The future indicative**

To form this tense add the following endings to the infinitive of any of the three groups of verbs. The endings are the same for the three groups.

**-ei -ás -á -emos -ão**  
**beber → beberei beberás beberá beberemos beberão**  
I shall/will drink, etc.

Three exceptions: **fazer, dizer, trazer**.

### **The future perfect**

Use the future tense of **ter** (to have) + past participle.

**Terão fechado a porta** They will have shut the door  
**Terá visto o filme** He will have seen the film

The future tense can also result from the present tense of the verb **ir** ('to go') + infinitive. This tense expresses the English 'I'm going to (eat)', 'we are going to (go out)', etc.

**Vou visitar uma amiga**  
I'm going to visit a friend

**Vai arrumar a sala**  
She is going to tidy up the living room

### **The conditional tense**

This expresses the English 'you would go', etc. and is formed by adding one set of endings to all three groups of verbs in their infinitive state:

**-ia -ias -ia -íamos -iam**

<b>Comprariam a casa</b>	They would buy the house
<b>Comeria o bolo</b>	He would eat the cake
<b>partiríamos</b>	we would leave

Three exceptions: **fazer, dizer, trazer**.

The conditional perfect tense uses the conditional of the verb **ter** + past participle and is the equivalent of the English 'you would have bought'.

<b>Terias comprado o vestido</b>	You would have bought the dress
<b>Teríamos visto o filme</b>	We would have seen the film

### **The perfect tense**

To form this tense use the present indicative of the verb **ter** + past participle. This tense expresses repeated events or states in the past which continue to have an effect in the present.

**Tenho estado triste**  
I have been feeling sad (recently and still am)

**Temos estudado muito**  
We have been studying a lot (lately and still are)

### **The pluperfect tense**

This tense expresses the English 'we had (left)' and is formed by the imperfect indicative of **ter** + past participle:

**Tinha ouvido a música**  
He/she/you had listened to the music

**Tínhamos partido cedo**  
We had left early

*Note:* The simple pluperfect tense also exists, which has the same meaning as the pluperfect above. This tense is never used in speech

but can replace the pluperfect tense in written language. An example of the simple pluperfect:

**comprara compraras comprara compráramos compraram**

### The imperative

This is for commands or instructions:

<b>compra</b>	<b>come</b>	<b>parte</b>	(tu)
<b>compre</b>	<b>coma</b>	<b>parta</b>	(você)
<b>compremos</b>	<b>comamos</b>	<b>partamos</b>	(nós)
<b>comprem</b>	<b>comam</b>	<b>partam</b>	(vocês)

It is formed by removing the **-ar**, **-er** or **-ir** of a verb and adding the above endings. For irregular verbs see verb tables.

### The past participle

To form, remove the **-ar**, **-er** or **-ir** endings of any verb, adding:

for <b>-ar</b> verbs: <b>-ado</b>	<b>falado</b> spoken
for <b>-er</b> verbs: <b>-ido</b>	<b>comido</b> eaten
for <b>-ir</b> verbs: <b>-ido</b>	<b>decidido</b> decided

There are a number of irregular past participles. See the irregular verbs at the end of this section.

### The subjunctive mood

#### The present subjunctive

The present subjunctive is used to express something which is open to doubt:

**Talvez estude?** Perhaps he is studying?

It also expresses an emotional response to situations:

**É pena que você não venha** It's a shame you're not coming

To form the present subjunctive, take the **eu** part of any present indicative verb, remove the ending and add:

for **-ar** verbs: **-e -es -e -emos -em**

for **-er** and **-ir** verbs: **-a -as -a -amos -am**

**ter** (pres. indic. **tenho**): remove the **-o** → **tenh-**  
**tenha, tenhas, tenha, etc.**

**Não penso que ele coma muito**  
I don't think that he eats a lot

#### Imperfect subjunctive

The imperfect subjunctive is similar in use to the present subjunctive but indicates situations which are even more remote and uncertain. To form, take the 3rd person plural (**eles/elas**) of any verb in the preterite tense, remove the **-ram** ending and add the following endings:

**-sse -sses -sse -sse -ssemos -ssem**

These endings apply to all three verb groups.

#### Perfect subjunctive

This is formed from the present subjunctive of **ter** + past participle:

<b>(que) tenha mandado</b>	(that) I have sent
<b>(que) tenhamos lido</b>	(that) we have read

#### Pluperfect subjunctive

This is formed from the imperfect subjunctive of **ter** + past participle:

**Não saberia se ele tivesse visitado o museu**  
I would not have known if he had visited the museum

#### Future subjunctive

To form the future subjunctive, start from the 3rd person plural of any verb in the preterite tense, remove the **-ram** and add:

**-r -res -r -rmos -rem**

The future subjunctive conveys the idea of the future, but one which is uncertain. Whereas in English we can use the present tense to indicate a future event, for example, 'When I arrive, I'll telephone', in Portuguese the future subjunctive is used after 'when' because it is uncertain *when* I will arrive.

## A note on vós

**Vós** is a personal pronoun meaning ‘you’ (pl) but it is not used in everyday conversation throughout Brazil and Portugal. Since the **vós** forms have been omitted from the conjugations in the following section, here is a summary of the endings for these forms in the indicative mood:

	-ar	-er	-ir
present	-ais	-eis	-is
preterite	-astes	-estes	-istes
imperfect	-áveis	-éveis	-íeis
future	-eis	-eis	-eis
conditional	-íeis	-íeis	-íeis

## Irregular verbs

### Dar ('to give')

#### Indicative mood

Present	dou	dás	dá	damos	dão
Preterite	dei	deste	deu	demos	deram
Imperfect	dava	davas	dava	dávamos	davam
Future	darei	darás	dará	daremos	darão
Conditional	daria	darias	daria	dariámos	dariam
P. infin.	dar	dares	dar	darmos	darem
Imperative	dá	dê		demos	dêem
Past participle	dado				

#### Subjunctive mood

Present	dê	dês	dê	demos	dêem
Imperfect	desse	desses	desse	déssemos	dessem
Future	der	deres	der	dermos	derem

### Dizer ('to say')

#### Indicative mood

Present	digo	dizes	diz	dizemos	dizem
Preterite	disse	disseste	disse	dissemos	disseram
Imperfect	dizia	dizias	dizia	dizíamos	diziam
Future	direi	dirás	dirá	diremos	dirão
Conditional	diria	dirias	diria	diríamos	diriam
P. infin.	dizer	dizeres	dizer	dizermos	dizerem
Imperative	diz	diga		digamos	digam
Past participle	dito				

	Subjunctive mood				
Present	diga	digas	diga	digamos	digam
Imperfect	dissesse	disesses	disesse	disssésemos	dissessem
Future	disser	disseres	disser	dissermos	disserem

#### Estar ('to be')

#### Indicative mood

Present	estou	estás	está	estamos	estão
Preterite	estive	estiveste	esteve	estivemos	estiveram
Imperfect	estava	estavas	estava	estávamos	estavam
Future	estarei	estarás	estará	estaremos	estarão
Conditional	estaria	estarias	estaria	estariámos	estariam
P. infin.	estar	estares	estar	estarmos	estarem
Imperative	está	esteja	esteja	estejamos	estejam
Past participle		estado			

#### Subjunctive mood

Present	esteja	estejas	esteja	estejamos	estejam
Imperfect	estivesse	estivesses	estivesse	estivéssemos	estivessem
Future	estiver	estiveres	estiver	estivermos	estiverem

#### Fazer ('to do/make')

#### Indicative mood

Present	faço	fazes	faz	fazemos	fazem
Preterite	fiz	fizeste	fez	fizemos	fizeram
Imperfect	fazia	fazias	fazia	fazíamos	faziam
Future	farei	farás	fará	faremos	farão
Conditional	faria	farias	faria	faríamos	fariam
P. infin.	fazer	fazeres	fazer	fazermos	fazerem
Imperative	faz	faça	faça	façamos	façam
Past participle		feito			

#### Subjunctive mood

Present	faça	faças	faça	façamos	façam
Imperfect	fizesse	fizesses	fizesse	fizéssemos	fizessem
Future	fizer	fizeres	fizer	fizermos	fizerem

#### Ir ('to go')

#### Indicative mood

Present	vou	vais	vai	vamos	vão
Preterite	fui	foste	foi	fomos	foram
Imperfect	ia	ias	ia	íamos	iam
Future	irei	irás	irá	iremos	irão
Conditional	iria	irias	iria	iríamos	iriam
P. infin.	ir	ires	ir	irmos	irem
Imperative	vai	vá	vá	vamos	vão
Past participle		ido			

Subjunctive mood						
	Present	vá	vás	vá	vamos	vão
Imperfect		fosse	fosses	fosse	fôssemos	fossem
Future		for	fores	for	formos	forem
<b>Poder</b> ('to be able to') <i>Indicative mood</i>						
Present	posso	podes	pode	podemos	podem	
Preterite	pude	pudeste	pôde	pudemos	puderam	
Imperfect	odia	odiaias	odia	odiaímos	odiaiam	
Future	poderei	poderás	poderá	poderemos	poderão	
Conditional	poderia	poderias	poderia	poderíamos	poderiam	
P. infin.	poder	poderes	poder	podermos	poderem	
Imperative		pode	possa	possamos	possam	
Past participle		podido				
Subjunctive mood						
	Present	possa	possas	possa	possamos	possam
Imperfect		pudesse	pudesse	pudesse	pudéssemos	pudessem
Future		puder	puderes	puder	pudermos	puderem
<b>Pôr</b> ('to put') <i>Indicative mood</i>						
Present	ponho	pões	põe	pomos	põem	
Preterite	pus	puseste	pôs	pusemos	puseram	
Imperfect	punha	punhas	punha	púnhamos	punham	
Future	porei	porás	porá	poremos	porão	
Conditional	poria	porias	poria	poríamos	poriam	
P. infin.	pôr	pores	pôr	pormos	porem	
Imperative		põe	ponha	ponhamos	ponham	
Past participle		posto				
Subjunctive mood						
	Present	ponha	ponhas	ponha	ponhamos	ponham
Imperfect		pusesse	pusesses	pusesse	puséssemos	pusessem
Future		puser	puseres	puser	pusermos	puserem
<b>Querer</b> ('to want') <i>Indicative mood</i>						
Present	quero	queres	quer	queremos	querem	
Preterite	quis	quiseste	quis	quisemos	quieram	
Imperfect	queria	querias	queria	queríamos	queriam	
Future	quererei	quererás	quererá	quereremos	quererão	
Conditional	quereria	quererias	quereria	quereríamos	quereriam	
P. infin.	querer	quereres	querer	querermos	quererem	
Imperative		quer	queira	queiramos	queiram	
Past participle		querido				

Subjunctive mood						
	Present	queira	queiras	queiras	queiramos	queiram
Imperfect		quisesse	quisesses	quisesse	quiséssemos	quisessem
Future		quierer	quiereres	quierer	quieremos	quiererem
<b>Ser</b> ('to be') <i>Indicative mood</i>						
Present	sou	é	é	somos	são	
Preterite	fui	foste	foi	fomos	foram	
Imperfect	era	eras	era	éramos	eram	
Future	serei	serás	será	seremos	serão	
Conditional	seria	series	seria	seríamos	seriam	
P. infin.	ser	seres	ser	sermos	serem	
Imperative		sê	seja	sejamos	sejam	
Past participle		sido				
Subjunctive mood						
	Present	seja	sejas	seja	sejamos	sejam
Imperfect		fosse	fosses	fosse	fôssemos	fossem
Future		for	fores	for	formos	forem
<b>Ter</b> ('to have') <i>Indicative mood</i>						
Present	tenho	tens	tem	temos	têm	
Preterite	tive	tiveste	teve	tivemos	tiveram	
Imperfect	tinha	tinhas	tinha	tínhamos	tinham	
Future	terei	terás	terá	teremos	terão	
Conditional	teria	terias	teria	teríamos	teriam	
P. infin.	ter	teres	ter	termos	terem	
Imperative		tem	tenha	tenhamos	tenham	
Past participle		tido				
Subjunctive mood						
	Present	tenha	tenhas	tenha	tenhamos	tenham
Imperfect		tivesse	tivesses	tivesse	tivéssemos	tivessem
Future		tiver	tiveres	tiver	tivermos	tiverem
<b>Ver</b> ('to see') <i>Indicative mood</i>						
Present	vejo	vês	vê	vemos	vêem	
Preterite	vi	viste	viu	vimos	viram	
Imperfect	via	vias	via	víamos	viam	
Future	verei	verás	verá	veremos	verão	
Conditional	veria	verias	veria	veríamos	veriam	
P. infin.	ver	veres	ver	vermos	verem	
Imperative		vê	veja	vejamos	vejam	
Past participle		visto				

	<i>Subjunctive mood</i>				
Present	<b>veja</b>	<b>vejas</b>	<b>veja</b>	<b>vejamos</b>	<b>vejam</b>
Imperfect	<b>visse</b>	<b>visses</b>	<b>visse</b>	<b>víssemos</b>	<b>vissem</b>
Future	<b>vir</b>	<b>vires</b>	<b>vir</b>	<b>virmos</b>	<b>virem</b>
<b>Vir</b> (to come) <i>Indicative mood</i>					
Present	<b>venho</b>	<b>vens</b>	<b>vem</b>	<b>vimos</b>	<b>vêm</b>
Preterite	<b>vim</b>	<b>vieste</b>	<b>veio</b>	<b>viemos</b>	<b>vieram</b>
Imperfect	<b>vinha</b>	<b>vinhas</b>	<b>vinha</b>	<b>vínhamos</b>	<b>vinham</b>
Future	<b>virei</b>	<b>virás</b>	<b>virá</b>	<b>viremos</b>	<b>virão</b>
Conditional	<b>viria</b>	<b>virias</b>	<b>viria</b>	<b>viríamos</b>	<b>viriam</b>
P. infin.	<b>vir</b>	<b>vires</b>	<b>vir</b>	<b>virmos</b>	<b>virem</b>
Imperative		<b>vem</b>	<b>venha</b>	<b>venhamos</b>	<b>venham</b>
Past participle		<b>vindo</b>			
	<i>Subjunctive mood</i>				
Present	<b>venha</b>	<b>venhas</b>	<b>venha</b>	<b>venhamos</b>	<b>venham</b>
Imperfect	<b>viesse</b>	<b>viesses</b>	<b>viesse</b>	<b>viéssemos</b>	<b>viessem</b>
Future	<b>vier</b>	<b>vieres</b>	<b>vier</b>	<b>viermos</b>	<b>vierem</b>

# Key to exercises

## Lesson 1

### 2

- A: Excuse me, what's your name?  
 B: My name is Jorge, and what's your name?  
 A: My name is Luisa, pleased to meet you.  
 A: Good evening, how is it going?  
 B: I'm fine, thanks, and you?  
 A: I'm fine, thanks.

### 3

ele é, nós somos, vocês são, tu és, eu sou, elas são, você é

### 4

Oi! Tudo bem? Tudo bem, obrigado/a. Chamo-me ... Como se chama? Você é da França? Ah, você é da Inglaterra! Sou da Holanda. Muito prazer!

### 5a

- |                        |                  |
|------------------------|------------------|
| <b>Sou brasileira</b>  | I am Brazilian   |
| <b>Sou português</b>   | I am Portuguese  |
| <b>Ele é angolano</b>  | He is Angolan    |
| <b>Você é inglesa?</b> | Are you English? |
| <b>Ela é escocesa</b>  | She is Scottish  |
| <b>Sou holandês</b>    | I am Dutch       |

**5b**

- 1 Apresento-lhe o Tom; (ele) é da Inglaterra; é inglês
- 2 Apresento-lhe a Gabriella; (ela) é da Itália; é italiana
- 3 Apresento-lhe o Pelé; (ele) é do Brasil; é brasileiro
- 4 Apresento-lhe o Hans; (ele) é da Alemanha; é alemão

**6**

- 1 Você é inglesa?
- 2 Sou escocês
- 3 Ele é português
- 4 Ela é brasileira?
- 5 Você é angolana

**7**

- 1 o celular
- 2 a mulher
- 3 umas bolachas
- 4 os relógios
- 5 uns sorvetes
- 6 as colinas

**8**

- 1 umas nuvens
- 2 os pratos
- 3 uns pentes
- 4 as praias

**9**

- 1 o tapete
- 2 a cadeira
- 3 o lápis
- 4 uma revista
- 5 um carro

**10**

- 1 Kathleen é irlandesa
- 2 Ela é holandesa
- 3 Você (Matthew) é inglês e eu (Jane) sou escocesa
- 4 Andrew é escocês mas Jules é francês

**11**

- 1 False. Jorge is from Brazil.
- 2 He says: I'd like you to meet Paulo. He is from Portugal; he's Portuguese.
- 3 He wants to know what nationality Isabel is.
- 4 That Isabel is not Italian, she is Brazilian as well.

**12**

The missing items are: **um sanduíche de queijo, um bolo, uma cerveja, uma água mineral com gás**

***How much can you remember?***

- 1 LIDIA: Como se chama?  
PABLO: Chamo-me Pablo.  
LIDIA: Você é espanhol?  
PABLO: Sou. Sou de Madrid. E você?  
LIDIA: Sou portuguesa, sou de Portugal.
- 2 At 9 a.m. **Bom dia!**; At 6 p.m. **Boa tarde!**; At 11 p.m. **Boa noite!**
- 3 Você é inglês? De onde você é? Como se chama? Chamo-me ...; sou da Itália
- 4 (a) **um chope, um guaraná, um cafezinho**  
(b) You would eat **um bolo**, not the others  
(c) You would not drink **um sanduíche**
- 5 1 **Boa tarde, como vai?**  
2 **Como se chama?**  
3 **De onde você é?**  
4 **Tudo bem?**  
5 **Qual é a sua nacionalidade?**
- 6 **Chamo-me ... Sou ... Sou de ...**

- 7 1 They are Brazilian 2 Rio de Janeiro in Brazil 3 They come to Portugal every year to visit their brother Carlos and Fernanda are Brazilian. They live in Rio de Janeiro in Brazil. They come to Portugal every year to visit their brother José who lives in Oporto.

**Lesson 2****1**

**vivo, vives, vive, vivemos, vivem**  
**divido, divides, divide, dividimos, dividem**

**2**

**Gosto de roupa; gostamos de fruta; gostam de viajar; gosta do cinema francês; gostas do rádio; gostam das casas modernas**

**3**

**Gostam de esportes; gostam de jogar futebol; gostam de viajar; gostam de cinema; não gostam da comida chinesa; não gostam de palavras cruzadas; não gostam de tempo frio; não gostam de transporte público.**

**5**

**Ele canta bossa nova; trabalha num clube no Guarujá. Ele é casado mas separado. Mora num apartamento perto da praia. Gosta de tocar violão; de arte. Não gosta de violência; de intolerância. Ele é bastante tímido mas gosta muito de se divertir.**

**6**

1 In Planaltina in the outskirts of Brasília. 2 The mother is a telephonist; the father is a garage mechanic.

**7**

**JORGE:** Sou cantor. Sou casado. Moro em São Paulo numa casa. Sou tímido. Gosto de ópera; não gosto de futebol.  
**CLARA:** Sou cantora. Sou solteira. Moro em Manaus numa casa. Sou preguiçosa. Gosto de andar; não gosto de esporte.

**8**

**médica; jornalista; padeira; gerente; pintora; carpinteira; jornalista**

**9**

- 1 The one asking for **cabeleireiras/os**. Yes, the pay is good.
- 2 Initiative, dynamism and organization.
- 3 The one looking for a marketing manager.

**10**

1 Paulo's free days are Monday and Friday. 2 He is not available on Thursday. 3 False: he is not busy on Friday. 4 At the weekend he rests (Saturday) and visits friends (Sunday).

**11**

**otimista – pessimista**  
**impaciente – calma**  
**inteligente – estúpido**  
**trabalhador – preguiçoso**

**12**

1 São duas e quinze 2 São quinze para a uma 3 É uma hora  
 4 São cinco e vinte

**13**

- 1 **ao meio dia e meia às (doze e trinta)**
- 2 **às cinco para as sete** (24hr clock: **às dezoito e cinquenta e cinco**)
- 3 **às oito e meia** (24hr clock: **às vinte e trinta**)
- 4 seven

**14**

**A janela está aberta; O carro é azul; A menina é inglesa; Ele está triste; Elas estão na cozinha; Curitiba é uma cidade no Brasil.**

**15**

- 1 He describes himself as quite tall and dark.
- 2 He is a doctor and works in a hospital in the centre of the city (Rio).
- 3 False: he likes computers.

I'm a doctor and I live in a flat in Rio de Janeiro. I work in a hospital in the city centre. I'm quite tall and dark. I like computers. I don't like being ill.

### **How much can you remember?**

**1**

- 1 Gosto de jazz; não gosto de política.
- 2 Trabalho numa companhia no Rio às quartas-feiras.
- 3 Ele é americano, bastante tímido, mas otimista.

**2**

1 wanted/required 2 intelligent 3 ugly 4 the newspaper 5 calm  
6 the flat 7 a magazine 8 short 9 the beach

**3**

1 as casas 2 pessimistas 3 os cinemas 4 os pintores

**4**

1 a médica 2 a senhora 3 a cantora 4 a jornalista 5 solteira 6 tímida

**5**

**É meio-dia e meia; São duas e quinze;  
São quinze e quarenta e cinco; São nove horas**

half past two, midnight, twenty past nine,  
one o'clock, ten past seven, three o'clock

### **Lesson 3**

**1**

- 1 Miguel is 32/**O Miguel tem 32 anos**
- 2 How old is Maria?/**Quantos anos tem a Maria?**
- 3 When is your birthday?/**Quando é o seu aniversário?**
- 4 It's my birthday/**É o dia do meu aniversário**

**2**

- |           |   |
|-----------|---|
| 1 ANA:    | Nasci na Madeira; o meu aniversário é no dia seis de Maio; tenho treze anos.                    |
| 2 ROBERT: | Nasci na Irlanda; o meu aniversário é no dia quatorze de Agosto; tenho vinte e quatro anos.     |
| 3 PEDRO:  | Nasci na Espanha; o meu aniversário é no dia primeiro de Março; tenho quarenta e dois anos.     |
| 4 MARIA:  | Nasci no Brasil; o meu aniversário é no dia vinte e nove de Dezembro; tenho trinta e seis anos. |

**3**

- |          |   |
|----------|---|
| ANTÔNIO: | My name is Antônio, and what's your name? |
| MANUELA: | My name is Manuela. Where are you from?   |
| ANTÔNIO: | I'm from Recife, and you?                 |
| MANUELA: | I'm from Belém. I'm 19. How old are you?  |
| ANTÔNIO: | I'm 25.                                   |

**4**

- 1 Five: herself, her parents, her brother and sister.
- 2 Brother: Zé. Sister: Cámi.
- 3 Her brother is 20, her sister is 16.
- 4 Cristina was born in Brazil; her brother and sister in Portugal.

**5**

- |           |  |
|-----------|--|
| CRISTINA: | a minha bolsinha; a minha maquiagem; os meus óculos;<br>as minhas vitaminas. |
|-----------|--|

ANTÔNIO: a minha carteira; a minha agenda; as minhas chaves; os meus óculos de sol.

**6**

JOSÉ: Hi, Teresa. Do you have a large or small family?

TERESA: I have a large family: three sons and a daughter. Vasco is the eldest and Clara the youngest ... the ages vary between 30 and 15 years of age.

JOSÉ: Your husband is retired, isn't he? Do you still work?

TERESA: I'm a housewife. I always have lots to do!

**7**

**1 o restaurante onde fui ontem. 2 Onde fui eu? 3 Eu passei o dia na praia. 4 Tomei banhos de sol.**

**8a**

encontrei, encontraste, encontrou, encontramos, encontraram; escondi, escondeste, escondeu, escondemos, esconderam; decidi, decidiste, decidiu, decidimos, decidiram

**8b**

**1 Foi o José 2 Foi o Pedrinho 3 Foi o Antônio 4 Foi a Dona Augusta  
5 Foi a Rosa 6 Foi a Maria Lucinda 7 Foi a Teresa 8 Foi o Sr Silva  
9 Foi a Susana 10 Foi o casal Sousa**

**9**

**Faz favor! Queria uma mesa para uma pessoa. Está ótima. Tem o cardápio por favor? Sim, por favor. Queria uma salada mista, uma moqueca de camarão e uma garrafa de vinho branco. A conta por favor.**

**10**

**1 chicken soup 2 The meat comes with rice; the fish comes with potatoes 3 lettuce and tomato 4 False: Dessert consists of fruit – oranges, apples or grapes.**

**How much can you remember?**

**1 Quantos anos tem? Quantos anos faz?**

**2 Quando é o seu aniversário?**

**3 Estou com pressa**

**4 Nasci em Londres**

**5 O meu irmão tem dezesseis anos; a sua namorada tem quinze anos**

**6 as suas chaves e a sua carteira**

**7 Queria uma mesa para dois e o cardápio se faz favor**

**2**

**1 morrendo 2 minha chama 3 tem 4 nasceu**

**3**

**1 os meus irmãos 2 o seu carro 3 os seus óculos de sol 4 a minha bolsinha 5 os seus livros 6 a sua caneta**

**5**

**sessenta e seis, setenta e três, cento e um, vinte e três, sete, oitenta e sete, dois mil, duzentos e sete, oito, noventa, quarenta e cinco, seiscentos e setenta e nove, dez, um/uma, trinta e seis**

**6**

**o jantar = dinner**

**a ceia = supper**

**o café da manhã = breakfast**

**o almoço = lunch**

**7**

I was born in London. I am 22. My birthday is on the 15th May. How old is Paulo? He is 40. His birthday is on the 1st of December.

**8**

**1 His neighbour and friend, Sr Mendes 2 To sit down 3 A drink 4 Beer 5 Telephone his wife**

**Lesson 4****1**

**Faz favor! Desculpe!** 2 **Como?** 3 **Não sei** 4 **aqui** (here), **ali** (there); **cá** (here), **lá** (there), **aí** (there) 5 **de nada/não há de quê**

**2**

1 **dentro (da caixa)** 2 **em frente de** 3 **atrás de** 4 **em cima de**  
5 **debaixo de** 6 **ao lado de**

**3**

**perto de, debaixo de, em frente de, fora de**

**4**

1 Can you tell me where the Jardim América is? 2 The Directions are: go straight on. Stay on this side of the street. At the end of the square turn to the right and immediately on your left you will find a road going down to the Jardim América.

**5****A**

- 1 **Você siga sempre em frente. A sapataria fica em frente do Jardim da Luz**
- 2 **Você siga sempre em frente, atravesse a avenida Ipiranga, siga sempre em frente, e depois vire à esquerda**
- 3 **Você siga sempre em frente. Depois, vire à direita e o hospital é em frente da estação**
- 4 **Siga sempre em frente, vire à direita e atravesse a avenida São João. No fim desta avenida vire à esquerda e o supermercado fica ao fim da rua**
- 5 **Os correios são logo ali, à esquerda, na esquina**

**B**

- 1 **É ao lado do teatro**
- 2 **É atrás da delegacia de polícia**
- 3 **É em frente do banco**

**C**

1 **É perto do supermercado** 2 **É perto do cinema** 3 **É perto da tabacaria**

**D**

1 **É ao lado do banco** 2 **É ao lado da tabacaria** 3 **É ao lado da mercearia**

**6**

**Vamos a Belo Horizonte e precisamos de um quarto com banheiro.**  
**Vamos ficar dois dias. Queríamos um hotel de cinco estrelas**

**7**

**Vou viajar de avião e vou ficar uma semana**

**8**

**passaporte; cheques de viagem; cartões de crédito; carteira; pasta;**  
**pasta; pasta**

**9**

- 1 **Ele perdeu o seu passaporte; ele perdeu os seus cheques de viagem; ele perdeu os seus cartões de crédito; ele perdeu a sua pasta**
- 2 **a sua carteira e a sua pasta**
- 3 **a sua pasta**

**10**

- 1 **Queria um quarto de casal com chuveiro, televisão e telefone para uma semana**
- 2 **Queria um quarto simples com banheira, chuveiro e telefone para quinze dias**
- 3 **Queria um quarto de casal com duas camas, rádio e televisão para duas noites.**

**11**

- 1 **Desculpe, mas não há toalhas/luz**
- 2 **Desculpe, mas não há telefone/papel higiênico**
- 3 **Desculpe, mas não há televisor**

**12**

- 1 **Desculpe, no meu quarto a persiana não funciona; a televisão está pifada**
- 2 **Desculpe, no meu quarto o telefone está quebrado; o rádio está quebrado; o chuveiro não funciona**
- 3 **Desculpe, no meu quarto o toalete não funciona; a luz não funciona**

***How much can you remember?***

**1**

- 1 **Queria reservar um quarto de casal com café da manhã incluído para seis noites**
- 2 **Dê-me o seu número de telefone. De nada**
- 3 **Perdi a minha carteira, as minhas chaves, o meu passaporte e os meus cartões de crédito**
- 4 **Reservaram um quarto de casal com duas camas com chuveiro**

**2**

- sem banheira** = without bath  
**um quarto de casal** = a double room  
**vire à direita** = turn to the right  
**no fim desta rua** = at the end of this road

**3**

- reservar:** reservei      to reserve  
**atravessar:** atravessei      to cross  
**seguir:** segui      to follow  
**virar:** virei      to turn  
**subir:** subi      to go up  
**confirmar:** confirmei      to confirm

**4**

- 1 **Vão atravessar a rua** 2 **Vou reservar um quarto** 3 **Ela vai virar à esquerda**

**5**

- 1 **Pode me dizer onde é o banco/os correios/a estação ferroviária/a biblioteca/a estação rodoviária?**

**6**

**faz favor! com licença!**

**7**

**debaixo de, atrás de, em cima de, junto de, longe de, ao lado de, perto de, à direita de, ao lado de**

**8**

- 1 Is there a hotel near here? 2 Can you tell me where the theatre is? 3 Where is the mini-market? 4 Where is the post office?

**9**

<b>felizmente</b>	= fortunately
<b>encontrar</b>	= to find
<b>avião</b>	= plane
<b>reservar</b>	= to reserve
<b>que azar!</b>	= that's unfortunate!
<b>quinze dias</b>	= a fortnight

**10**

**uma cama, um rádio, um telefone, toalhas, um televisor**

**11**

- 1 the Continental Hotel 2 cross this avenue, go down that road there opposite/in front, at the end of the road turn to your left and you will find the hotel very close by on your right; directions given

by a policeman 3 the Hotel Marisol 4 whether the Marisol Hotel will be more expensive than the Continental

## Lesson 5

**1**

**saldos/liquidação** sale; **preços baixos** low prices; **caixa** cash desk;  
**aberto** open; **saída** exit; **entrada livre** come in and browse;  
**fechado** closed; **ICM incluído** VAT included

**2**

Um par de alpargatas pretas, por favor  
 O meu número é trinta e sete  
 Sim, por favor. Estas estão um pouco grandes. Tem um tamanho abaixo?  
 Obrigado/a. Gosto destas ... Fico com elas. Quanto custam?  
 Posso pagar com cheque?

**3**

2 Este trem é mais rápido do que este  
 3 Este livro é mais interessante do que este  
 4 Estes sapatos são mais modernos do que estes

**4**

1 Estes sapatos são mais caros do que estes  
 2 Ela é tão alta como o seu pai  
 3 O trem é mais rápido do que o ônibus  
 4 Ele é tão inteligente como o seu irmão

**5**

pouco – muito; mais – menos; grande – pequeno; maior – menor;  
 ótimo – péssimo

**8**

1 Pode me mostrar uma blusa de malha verde?  
 2 Queria uma camiseta de algodão

3 Posso ver um par de sapatos pretos?

4 Queria uma blusa verde clara

5 Pode me mostrar uma gravata cinzenta de seda?

**9**

a farmácia, a lanchonete, uma livraria, a papelaria,  
 o cabeleireiro, a lavanderia automática, os correios

**10**

1 a shirt 2 red 3 size (40) 4 Where is the fitting room? Can I pay by cheque? The price is very good

I'd like to buy a shirt please. Do you have other colours? I prefer the red one. My size is 40. Where is the fitting room? The price is very good. Can I pay by cheque?

**11**

baker's – a padaria  
 tobacconist's – a tabacaria  
 minimarket – o minimercado  
 butcher's – o açougue  
 fish shop – a peixaria  
 grocer's – a mercearia

**12**

a tabacaria – os cigarros  
 a farmácia – os remédios  
 a frutaria – a fruta  
 a livraria – os livros  
 o correio – os selos  
 a padaria – o pão  
 a loja de móveis usados – os móveis de segunda mão

**13**

2 um pacote de manteiga e um pacote de café  
 3 meio litro de vinho  
 4 pode me dar duzentos gramas de queijo  
 5 três quilos e meio de batatas

- 6 queria dois quilos de cebolas  
 7 um tubo de pasta de dentes/queria sabão  
 8 Dê-me quatro quilos de açúcar

**How much can you remember?**

**1**

- 1 Posso pagar com cartão de crédito?  
 2 Qual é o seu tamanho? 3 Ficam-lhe bem; fica-me bem  
 4 Preciso de um tamanho acima 5 Fico com eles/elas  
 6 Posso experimentar? É mesmo uma pechincha

**2**

- 1 este 2 aquelas 3 este 4 estas 5 isto

**3**

- 1 tão 2 mais 3 menos 4 o melhor

**4**

- 1 a dress 2 it was too big 3 buy a pair of high-heeled shoes and a handbag

**Lesson 6**

**2**

- o duty-free, o cartão de embarque, o horário de partidas, não-fumantes, o controle de passaportes, a sala de espera, o portão de embarque

**3**

- 2 Ele irá ao check-in 3 Ele irá ao controle de passaportes 4 Ele visitará o duty-free

**4a**

Excuse; loudspeaker; flight; time; flight; arrive

**4b**

apertar; cintos de segurança  
 refrescos; bebidas alcoólicas  
 comprar; cigarros; loção após-barba

**5**

Qual é a sua nacionalidade?  
 Mostre-me o seu passaporte  
 Quanto tempo vai ficar?

**6**

- 1 The writer is going to travel to Canada to visit his/her parents  
 2 Half past nine; over five hours  
 3 Go to the check-in desk and passport control  
 4 False: the writer hates flying

I'm going to travel to Canada to visit my parents. The flight will leave London at half past nine and will last more than five hours. Before boarding the plane, I have to go to the check-in desk and to passport control. I must admit that I don't like flying at all but, in this case, I have to!

**7**

terá ido; terá reclamado; terá passado; terá dito; terá apanhado

**8**

proibido estacionar no waiting; ocupado engaged; empurrar push; cancelado cancelled

**9**

Quando é o próximo trem para Santos? Quanto custa uma ida e volta? Queria uma tabela de horário por favor. Queríamos três passagens de ida para Bauru. De que plataforma parte o trem?

**10**

- 1 toilets
- 2 Estação Leopoldina
- 3 (a) restaurant; (b) petrol/gas station
- 4 bus, aeroplane, underground and train

**11**

- 1 I go by car
- 2 I go by underground
- 3 I go by bus
- 4 I go on foot
- 5 I go by taxi
- 6 I go by tram

**12**

- 1 Yes (Monza); 870,00 reais
- 2 Accident insurance
- 3 24 years
- 4 driving licence; identity card; credit card
- 5 No

**13**

**semáforos** traffic lights; **dê prioridade** give way; **obras** roadworks; **sentido único** one-way street; **desvio** diversion; **rodovia** motorway; **pedestres** pedestrians; **limite de velocidade** speed limit

**14**

- 1 Ten reais of diesel please!
- 2 I'd like ten litres of four-star petrol
- 3 Please check the oil
- 4 Can you check the tyre pressures?
- 5 I need more water in the radiator
- 6 Can you fill it up please!

**15**

**1 Faz favor de verificar o óleo e também a pressão dos pneus.**  
**Preciso de mais água no radiador e quinze reais de gasolina.**  
**Penso que tenho um furo num pneu.**

**How much can you remember?****1**

- 1 **Doze reais de gasolina comum, por favor**
- 2 **Onde é o controle de passaportes?**
- 3 **Que vôo anunciam?**
- 4 **Quando é o próximo trem para ...?**
- 5 **Não tenho nada a declarar**

**2**

- 1 **comido, dado, sido, visitado, esperado, verificado**
- 2 **feito, escrito, visto, posto, dito**

**3**

engaged, roadworks, push, no waiting, pedestrians, diversion, give way

**4**

- 1 **Uma ida por favor**
- 2 **Sou espanhol/a**
- 3 **Dez litros por favor**

**5**

- 1 False: **a hora de chegada** = the arrival time
- 2 False: **um atraso** = a delay
- 3 False: **a sala de espera** = the departure lounge
- 4 False: **a aeromoça** = the air hostess
- 5 False: **o cinto de segurança** = the safety belt
- 6 False: **um lugar de não-fumantes** = a no-smoking seat

**Lesson 7****1**

- 1 7.00 a.m.
- 2 In the bathroom
- 3 In his bedroom
- 4 In the kitchen
- 5 He leaves home
- 6 He jogs
2. *lava-se no banheiro*; 3 *Veste-se no seu quarto*; 4 *Senta-se na cozinha*; 5 *Sai de casa*; 6 *Faz jogging*

**2**

**levanto-me às ... horas; lavo-me no banheiro às ... horas. Visto-me no meu quarto. Tomo o café da manhã às ... horas. Saio de casa e vou ...**

**3**

**invejosamente** jealously, **serenamente**, serenely,  
**evidentemente** obviously, **triunfantemente** triumphantly

**4**

A REVISTA: A que horas se levantou?  
JORGE: Levantei-me às sete horas.  
A REVISTA: Onde se lavou?  
JORGE: Lavei-me no banheiro.  
A REVISTA: Onde se vestiu?  
JORGE: Vesti-me no meu quarto.  
A REVISTA: Onde se sentou para tomar o café da manhã?  
JORGE: Sentei-me na cozinha, claro!  
A REVISTA: A que horas saiu de casa?  
JORGE: Saí de casa às oito horas.  
A REVISTA: E depois?  
JORGE: Fiz jogging por meia hora

**5**

<i>Present indicative</i>	<i>Preterite tense</i>
<b>queixamo-nos</b>	<b>queixamo-nos</b>
<b>queixam-se</b>	<b>queixaram-se</b>
<b>queixas-te</b>	<b>queixaste-te</b>
<b>queixa-se</b>	<b>queixou-se</b>
<b>queixo-me</b>	<b>queixei-me</b>

**6**

**1 se levantou 2 sentamo-nos 3 se deitaram 4 se esqueceu**

**7a**

1 walk 2 run 3 lift 4 push 5 pull

**7b**

- 1 To put the ball in the opponents' net as many times as possible  
2 Two teams; on a rectangular piece of ground

Football is a ball sport in which two teams play on a rectangular piece of ground. The object of the game is to put the ball into the opponents' net as many times as possible (to score goals).

**8**

- |                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| <b>1 nós líamos</b>                   | we were reading                         |
| <b>2 ela ia ao teatro</b>             | she was going to the theatre            |
| <b>3 você dirigia lentamente</b>      | you were driving slowly                 |
| <b>4 eu estudava</b>                  | I was studying                          |
| <b>5 elas tinham muitos problemas</b> | they had (were having) lots of problems |

**9**

**1 (ele) pintava ... 2 (ele) bebia ... 3 (ele) fazia a barba ...**

**10**

**dariámos, seríamos, estaríamos, veríamos, viríamos, teríamos, faríamos**

**11**

- |  |
|--|
| <b>2 estou com dor de dentes</b>   |
| <b>3 dói-me a garganta</b>   |
| <b>4 dói-me o braço</b>  |
| <b>5 estou com dores no estômago</b>   |
| <b>6 doem-me as costas</b> (as costas means 'back' (pl), so the verb <b>doer</b> is in the plural) |
| <b>7 quebrei o joelho</b>  |

**12**

**2 Arranjei-o 3 Vendi-a 4 Você as tinha**

**13**

- 1 Dei-lhe um relógio 2 Não lhe disse as notícias 3 Comprou-lhe os bolos 4 Explicou-nos o problema

***How much can you remember?*****1**

**levantar-se, vestir-se, lavar-se, sentar-se**

**2**

- 1 levantei-me às ... horas
- 2 deitei-me às ... horas
- 3 lavo-me no banheiro

**3**

Usually I get up at 8 a.m., wash and dress. I eat breakfast in the kitchen. I leave home at 8.45 a.m. I go to my job in the city centre.

**4**

- 1 A que horas saiu de casa?
- 2 Onde se sentou para tomar o café da manhã?
- 3 Onde se vestiu?

**5**

to get angry, to remember, to be mistaken, to complain, to cut oneself, to sit down, to wash

**6**

respirávamos, comia, partia, andavam

**7**

Imperfect tense of **ter**: **tinha, tinhas, tinha, tínhamos, tinham**  
 Conditional tense of **ter**: **teria, terias, teria, teríamos, teriam**  
 Conditional tense of **fazer**: **faria, farias, faria, faríamos, fariam**

**8**

**estou resfriado/a; tenho dor de cabeça; sinto-me tonto/a; estou com dor de ouvido**

**9**

<b>falo-lhe</b>	I speak to her (or to him/to you)
<b>falei-te</b>	I spoke to you
<b>falaram-me</b>	they spoke to me
<b>falou-nos</b>	he (or she/you) spoke to us
<b>fala-lhes</b>	he (or she/you) speaks to them

**10**

- 1 7.30 a.m.
- 2 he has to go to work and his office is very far away

**Lesson 8****1**

- 1 Queria fazer uma chamada para Londres. Posso ver a lista telefônica? Qual é o código da Inglaterra e o código de Londres?
- 2 Dez selos para os Estados Unidos, por favor.
- 3 Tem algumas cartas dirigidas a (name), por favor?

**2**

- 1 viajado 2 mandado 3 comprado 4 visto 5 estado 6 treinado

**3**

**Coloque a ficha** – insert token  
**Retire o fone do gancho** – lift receiver  
**Aguarde o sinal de discar** – wait for the dialling tone  
**Disque o número** – dial number

**4**

- 1 tinha 2 tinha 3 tinha

**Crossword**

*Horizontal      Vertical*

- |                  |                  |
|------------------|------------------|
| 1 <b>Alagoas</b> | 2 <b>Lista</b>   |
| 5 <b>Escolas</b> | 4 <b>Acabada</b> |
| 6 <b>Saia</b>    | 6 <b>Sol</b>     |
| 8 <b>Ar</b>      | 7 <b>Amo</b>     |
| 9 <b>Somar</b>   |                  |

**5**

**Bom dia, posso trocar estes cheques de viagem, se faz favor? Estou na Pensão Bonita, na Rua Timbiras. Qual é o câmbio?**

**6**

- 1 It is vibrant and dynamic
- 2 It is a country full of large forests and natural resources
- 3 The mixture of different races. This produces a varied and exuberant culture and folklore

**7a**

**Bom dia, queria abrir um depósito em conta corrente com um talão de cheques, um cartão magnético para a caixa automática e um extrato de conta mensal.**

**7b**

- 1 Do you have a character reference?
- 2 Do you want a deposit account?
- 3 Do you want a cash-point card?
- 4 Do you have a specimen signature?

**8**

After inserting the card and keying in your personal code, select the desired option by pressing the requisite keys. Take your card. Take your money.

**9**

Your secret pin number is personal and non-transferable: memorize it; keep it in a safe place separate from the card; do not reveal it to anyone; if your card is lost or stolen contact your bank immediately; do not give it to anyone.

**10**

- 1 **as televisões**
- 2 **os aviões**
- 3 **as ligações**
- 4 **amáveis**
- 5 **portunhóis**
- 6 **radicais**

**How much can you remember?****1**

- 1 **Queria seis selos para Irlanda**
- 2 **Queria fazer uma chamada. Tem a lista telefônica?**
- 3 **Qual é o código para o Canadá? Qual é o código para Vancouver? Que cabine telefônica?**
- 4 **Não tenho estudado muito**
- 5 **o fone; o número; o sinal de discar/ligar; ser cortado; estar ocupado**

**2**

- 1 She had left when the postman arrived
- 2 We had put the cups in the kitchen
- 3 I had bought a sandwich to take away
- 4 Can I change a traveller's cheque?
- 5 What is the rate?
- 6 A cash-point card

**3**

**as ligações, os irmãos, os pães, azuis, os hotéis**

**4**

**a organização; a mão, o cão, difícil**

**5**

This morning I went to the telephone company office to make a call. The clerk there told me that I had to wait a bit because there was a queue. Whilst I was waiting, I looked for the international code for Portugal and also the area code for Lisbon. I dialled the number. It was engaged. I dialled the number again . . . Ah! This time it was ringing . . . I said ‘Hello?’ But nobody replied! I was cut off!

## Lesson 9

**1**

**Queria quatro platéias, no meio da sala 2 Queria um camarote para o próximo sábado. Está esgotada! 3 Seis ingressos de arquibancada descoberta para hoje, por favor. Tem um programa?**

**2a**

PAULO: Acho que o filme é chato. A história não presta para nada e a atuação é uma droga.  
 ISABEL: Não concordo contigo. A história não é horrível, é genial! Também acho que a atuação está bem. Na verdade, o filme é ótimo!  
 PAULO: Sem essa! É tão chato que me vou embora!

**2b**

1 **Carnaval** poster. Four days. The final of the masked competition; a car; 2 From Thursday to Sunday; Teatro João Caetano; Yes, on Thursdays and Fridays at 12.30 p.m.

**3**

**um filme de suspense**

a thriller

**um filme de amor/romance**

a love story

**um filme de terror**

a horror story

**um filme de ficção científica**

a science fiction film

**um musical**

a musical

**um desenho animado**

a cartoon

**5**

1 ENTREVISTADOR: What do you do on Sunday morning?

TRANSEUNTE 1: I stay in bed till midday. Afterwards, I watch TV.

ENTREVISTADOR: And on Sunday afternoon?

TRANSEUNTE 1: I watch more TV or listen to music. Sometimes I phone my friend for a chat.

2 ENTREVISTADOR: What do you do on Saturday morning?

TRANSEUNTE 2: I go and visit my parents. Later, I go to the supermarket.

ENTREVISTADOR: And on Saturday afternoon?

TRANSEUNTE 2: I go out with some friends.

**6a**

1 to go fishing 2 to wash the car 3 to go sailing 4 to read the papers

**6b**

1 gymnastics/aerobics 2 golf 3 karate 4 dancing 5 skating 6 surfing

**7**

**No sábado de manhã vou visitar uns amigos. No sábado à tarde jogo golfe e no sábado à noite vejo televisão. No domingo de manhã fico deitado/a na cama até o meio-dia e depois lavo o carro.**

**8**

**escreva, escrevas, escreva, escrevamos, escrevam**

**transfira, transfiras, transfira, transfiramos, transfiram**

**controle, controles, controle, controlemos, controlem**

**9**

1 **Faz bom tempo; faz sol** 2 **Faz mau tempo; está chovendo** 3 **Faz mau tempo; faz vento** 4 **Faz mau tempo; está nublado**

**10**

- 1 In a remote village in the south of Brazil 2 To predict the weather  
 3 From TV and the newspaper

**11**

- 1 Rio de Janeiro e Vitória 2 Teresina e Brasília 3 Manaus e Belém  
 4 o trovão; a neblina; nublado; a temperatura

**12**

- A: 1 A fortnight in Portugal 2 No, its a deluxe hotel 3 Beach; golf; water-skiing  
 B: 1 100 places for tents or trailers/caravans 2 laundrette **lavanderia automática**; shop **loja**; swimming pool **piscina**

**13**

hot showers, dishwashing facilities, clothes washing facilities, post office, lots of shade, pool

**14**

1 Isabel thinks it's a very long journey by car. 2 Fernanda thinks a walking holiday would be too tiring. 3 Isabel suggests a boarding house, an inn or to go camping; she doesn't agree with Fernanda about the **pousada** suggestion because it's too expensive.

### **How much can you remember?**

**1**

False: **a peça** = play  
 False: **o cartaz** = poster  
 False: **a próxima sessão** = the next show

**2**

**um bolinho; um cãozinho; um pratinho; estou farto/a!; é uma droga!; concordo completamente contigo**

**3**

a prize, a competition, Sunday morning, ticket office, a première, Christmas, it's sunny

**4**

**um desenho animado, um filme de terror, um filme de suspense, o karatê, o judô, a patinação, vejo televisão, saio com amigos**

**5**

False: **ir pescar** = to fish  
 False: **lavar o carro** = to wash the car  
 False: **ler os jornais** = to read the papers

**6**

**é ótimo!; é genial!; é legal!**

**7**

**1 Por que não vai a Bahia? 2 Seria uma viagem muito longa  
 3 (Ela) não gostaria de voar 4 (Ele) ficaria numa pousada 5 É menos caro fazer camping**

**8**

1 No, s/he stays in bed until mid-day 2 On Saturday morning after visiting his/her parents 3 False 4 Watches TV

On Saturday morning I like to visit my parents. Afterwards, I go to the supermarket. On Sunday morning I stay in bed until mid-day. On Sunday afternoon I watch TV.

### **Lesson 10**

**1**

Rui: figure 3 2 Isabel: figure 1 3 Paulo: figure 2

**2**

- 1 **Falsa:** a maioria vive em apartamentos
- 2 **Seis:** dois quartos de dormir; sala de visitas; sala de jantar; cozinha e banheiro

**3**

shops **lojas**; farms **sítios**; warehouses **armazéns**; garages **garagens**; buildings **prédios**; houses **moradias**; for sale (or sales) **vendas** (**vende-se** for sale); flats **apartamentos**; wanted **compras**; floors **andares**; offices **escritórios**; plots of land **terrenos**

**4**

- 1 A snack bar; the one advertising **lanchonete**
- 2 A beautiful mansion with 4 suites, 6 public rooms, gardens, swimming pool, barbecue, 800 square metres of land, in an exceptional location
- 3 The one for **Itapecerica**; it is a **sítio** (a small farm); it has a football pitch; it has its own springs and lakes
- 4 The one for **Rua Augusta** which is in the **Centro** (city centre)
- 5 The one in **Cabo Frio**
- 6 The one for **Búzios**

**5**

**uma televisão a cores, uma lareira, poltronas, parede, sofá, mesa baixa, abajur, quadro, mesinha**

**6**

**a tomada, inundado/a, o encanador, um fusível, um cano furado, a geladeira, a máquina de lavar roupa, a bomba, lâmpadas, ligar a televisão, não está ligado à corrente, as ligações, o encaixe**

**7**

**A geladeira está quebrada. Tenho um cano furado. Preciso de um encanador. A televisão não está ligada à corrente. Preciso de três lâmpadas. Tem um fusível?**

**8**

- 1 cooker
- 2 washing machine
- 3 fridge
- 4 dishwasher
- 5 kettle
- 6 tumble drier
- 7 toaster
- 8 iron
- 9 mixer
- 10 vacuum cleaner
- 11 microwave

**9**

- 1 Chemists (p 42), transport (p 43), classified advertisements (p 46)
- 2 **esporte** sport (p 24)
- 3 **tempo** weather (p 35), **cinemas** cinemas (p 73)
- 4 **Negócios**

**10**

- 1 (b); 2 (c); 3 (a)

**How much can you remember?****1**

O meu apartamento tem dois quartos de dormir, uma pequena cozinha, uma sala de estar e um banheiro. Não tenho jardim mas tenho garagem, porteiros eletrônicos, vidros duplos e antena parabólica.

**2**

- 1 **Não é bem assim**
- 2 **O apartamento tem vista para o mar**
- 3 **Acabamos de mudar de casa**
- 4 **Vende-se (vendas)** 5 **Procura-se/Compras**

**3**

Imperfect subjunctive of **terminar**: **terminasse, terminasses, terminasse, terminássemos, terminassem**

**4**

- 1 If I were to leave tomorrow, I would get home earlier
- 2 If he were to buy the car, it would cost a lot of money
- 3 If we were to travel all day, we would be (become) very tired

**5**

**uma sala de jantar, um quarto de dormir, uma cozinha, um banheiro**

**6**

**sei lá . . .; pois bem; portanto**

## Lesson 11

**1**

- 1 Not really. She has a motorbike whereas he has a bicycle; her hobby is hang gliding whereas his is stamp collecting
- 2 Probably not
- 3 Eric and Maria
- 4 Not very much!

**3**

- 1 **Quer fazer turismo**
- 2 **Tem de escrever um artigo para o seu jornal**
- 3 **Maria convida a Sarah a assistir a um curso de saltar de paraquedismo**
- 4 **Sarah recusa – ela não se interessa por esportes**

**4**

- B** Infelizmente, não posso.
- B** O que está passando?
- B** Gostaria muito de ir/parece-me um boa idéia/por que não?

**5**

**Tudo bem?** Is everything OK?; **Como vai?** How are you?; **Como se chama?** What's your name?; **De onde é?** Where are you from?; **O que faz?** What do you do?; **Está em férias?** Are you on holiday?; **O tempo está muito bom/ruim** The weather is very good/bad; **Chamo-me** My name is

**6**

- |                              |                                 |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1 Q: Bom dia, como se chama? | A: Chamo-me ...                 |
| 2 Q: De onde é?              | A: Sou de ...                   |
| 3 Q: Quer café?              | A: Por que não?                 |
| 4 Q: Bom dia, como vai?      | A: Bom dia, vou bem<br>obrigado |
| 5 Q: O que faz?              | A: Sou professor                |
| 6 Q: Quer comer?             | A: Quero, sim, obrigada         |

**7**

Last year I spent a great holiday on the beach. The weather was very good and I stayed in a boarding house which was very near the beach. I really liked the sea and all the people I met. I hope to go back there one day.

**8**

- 1 **No ano passado passei férias maravilhosas nas montanhas. O tempo estava muito ruim e eu fiquei numa pousada da juventude**
- 2 **No ano passado passei férias maravilhosas na cidade de Paris. O tempo estava bom e eu fiquei num hotel**
- 3 **No ano passado passei férias maravilhosas nos lagos. O tempo estava ótimo e eu fiquei numa pousada**

**9**

deplorable	<b>deplorável</b>
variable	<b>variável</b>
solution	<b>solução</b>
petition	<b>petição</b>
<b>lamentável</b>	lamentable
<b>incomparável</b>	incomparable
perfeição	perfection
<b>confortável</b>	comfortable

**10**

**incessante** incessant; **impulsivo** impulsive; **impossível** impossible; **impulso** impulse; **impreciso** imprecise; **imperceptível** imperceptible; **imparcial** impartial; **impetuoso** impetuous

**11**

- 1 By train and then bus
- 2 He caught a taxi
- 3 He plans to go to Recife at the end of the summer

**How much can you remember?****1**

a minha bebida preferida, o meu passatempo predileto/favorito, o advogado, a bibliotecária, a profissão

**2**

falar, falares, falar, falarmos, falarem

**3**

Refusing: **não posso, já fiz outros planos; acho que não é possível; infelizmente, não posso**

Accepting: **gostaria muito; está bom; parece-me uma boa idéia**

**4**

Chamo-me ... Como se chama? De onde é?

**6**

an invitation, I don't drive, the conference, hardworking, calm, efficient, to attend/go to

**7**

No ano passado visitei a Bélgica. O tempo estava ótimo. Fiquei num hotel perto da praia. Foi muito confortável. Gostaria de ir a Cuba este ano. Há dois anos fui à Grécia.

**Lesson 12****1**

- JANE: Alô? Posso falar com o gerente?  
 A COMPANHIA: Desculpe, mas ele ainda não chegou. É urgente?  
 JANE: Desculpe, pode falar mais devagar? Não falo português muito bem.  
 A COMPANHIA: Ah! Não desligue. O gerente já chegou.

**2**

- SR COELHO: Alô?  
 SECRETÁRIA: Alô.  
 SR COELHO: Aqui fala o Sr Coelho. Posso falar com o Sr Costa?  
 É muito urgente.  
 SECRETÁRIA: Desculpe, mas o Sr Costa está no Rio em negócios.  
 SR COELHO: Rio! Que azar! Eu estou falando do Rio!  
 SECRETÁRIA: Qual é o nome da sua companhia?  
 SR COELHO: Coelho & Irmão.  
 SECRETÁRIA: Não entendo. Está marcada na agenda uma reunião para hoje no Rio entre o Senhor Costa e Coelho & Irmão.

(a moment later ...)

- SR COELHO: Ah! Só um minuto. O Sr Costa já chegou!

**3**

a máquina de xerox; a máquina de escrever; o computador/o teclado; o telefone; o disquete; o fax

**4**

querida; recebi; ontem; pequena; que; amiga

**5**

Missing words: letter; arrange; to discuss; products; apologise; delay; arrange/set; month; confirmation; date; pleasure; city

Questions:

- 1 False: sent on 4th July
- 2 False: Brito & Co. want to arrange the meeting with Costa & Co. to purchase Costa's products
- 3 The delay in answering
- 4 Send a fax

## 6

- 1 Metal utensils
- 2 Yes
- 3 A catalogue
- 4 Cutlery sets. They are of the finest quality
- 5 Price lists

## 7

### *The Portuguese language*

The Portuguese language is spoken not only in Brazil, but also in Portugal (in Europe), in Guinea-Bissau, Angola, Mozambique and in the Cape Verde islands and São Tomé and Príncipe (in Africa), Goa, Damão and Diu (in India), Macau (in China) and Timor.

Portuguese is spoken more than French. The Portuguese language is the fifth most spoken language in the world. About 180 million people speak Portuguese.

Questions: 1 False 2 No 3 180 million 4 False

## Lesson 13

### 1

- 1 digitar a minha senha
- 2 entrar na Net
- 3 vou ao site do meu banco
- 4 vou checar o meu email
- 5 um cartão virtual
- 6 visitar um site de turismo

*Firstly, I am going to key in my password to access the Net. Next I will visit my bank site to check my balance. After that, I will check my mail. Ah! There are no messages. I am going to send a virtual card to my sister whose birthday it is today. Finally, I'm going to visit a tourism information site and book a hotel in Salvador.*

## 2

- 1 Em primeiro lugar digitei a minha senha
- 2 Depois fui ao site do meu banco para conferir o meu saldo
- 3 Depois disso, eu chequei o meu email
- 4 Enviei um cartão virtual para a minha irmã
- 5 Finalmente, visitei um site de turismo

## 3

- 1 4 million
- 2 usuários
- 3 it is cheaper
- 4 False: After 10pm the Internet is slower.

## 4

<b>a sala de chat</b>	chat room
<b>o scanner</b>	scanner
<b>a Tecnologia de Informação</b>	Information Technology
<b>o banco online</b>	online banking
<b>o browser</b>	browser
<b>o hacker</b>	hacker
<b>o provedor da Internet</b>	Internet Provider
<b>navegar na Net</b>	to surf the Net
<b>o shopping online</b>	online shopping
<b>a Internet/Net (also: a rede)</b>	the Internet
<b>o modem</b>	modem
<b>buscar</b>	to search
<b>o engenho de busca</b>	search engine
<b>o programa</b>	program

## 5

Dear Ester

Please could you set up a video conference for Thursday, 6 September, between the Lisbon and Rio offices, in order to discuss next year's sales strategy?

By the way, thank you for the Web page you built for the Rio office – it looks much better! Now it is so easy to access and download information and the graphics are excellent!

As requested, I attach the list of our DVD suppliers in South America.

All the best,  
Juliana Ramos  
Sales Executive

**6**

- 1 Ele encomendou 5 livros online
- 2 Ela compra todos os seus CDs na Internet
- 3 Eles fornecem os detalhes dos seus cartões de crédito
- 4 Você (o/a senhor/a) reservou um vôo para Salvador online.

**7**

- a) [www.radiobandeirantes.com.br](http://www.radiobandeirantes.com.br)
- b) [www.passeio.com.br](http://www.passeio.com.br)
- c) [www.submarino.com.br](http://www.submarino.com.br)

**8**

**1**

to key in your password  
to send a message  
to send an attachment  
to check your e-mail  
I don't have any mail  
my email address

**2** Last year Alberto sent a virtual Christmas card by e-mail to all his work colleagues

**9**

- 1 He picks up the mobile and consults his client database for the name of the person with whom he has the next interview
- 2 He consults his electronic organiser and confirms that he has a lunch with an important client that Friday coming
- 3 He rings the Churrascaria Brasil to reserve a table for Friday at 2pm.

**1**

- 1 Faz favor! Queria uma cerveja, um cafezinho, um bolo e um sanduíche de queijo.
- 2 Faz favor, que horas são? Chamo-me ..., sou de (país), sou (profissão). De onde é? Gosto do Rio; não gosto do Brasil.

**2**

- 1 Bom dia, queria um quarto para três noites com chuveiro; chamo-me ... ; tenho (vinte e cinco) anos; o dia 1º de Abril; sou de ...
- 2 Faz favor, para o centro da cidade? Pode falar mais devagar?
- 3 Faz favor! Queria uma mesa para duas pessoas. Queria sopa, frango com salada e uma garrafa de vinho branco. A conta, por favor

**3**

- 1 Posso ver algumas blusas de malha? O meu tamanho é quarenta. Prefiro a azul, quanto é/custa? Posso experimentar?
- 2 Para o Museu Nacional, por favor
- 3 Queria um pequeno carro para uma semana; pode encher, por favor

**4**

- 1 Faz favor, estou com dor de dentes, tem alguma coisa para a dor?
- 2 Queria dezesseis selos para os Estados Unidos, por favor. Posso trocar uns cheques de viagem? Qual é o câmbio?

**5**

- 1 Duas platéias, por favor; a que horas vai começar a peça?
- 2 Dois ingressos, por favor; duas cervejas, por favor
- 3 No ano passado fui a Itália. Este ano pretendo ir a ...
- 4 A televisão no meu quarto não funciona e não há toalhas

# Portuguese–English glossary

Brazilian (Br) words are distinguished from Portuguese (Pt) words where necessary.

<b>a</b>	at, to, it, the (f), you (f), her	<b>adiantado</b>	fast, early (time)
<b>à (contraction of a + a)</b>	at the, to the	<b>adoecer</b>	to become ill
<b>abaixo (de)</b>	down, below, under	<b>adorar</b>	to adore, to love
<b>aberto</b>	open	<b>advogado (m)</b>	lawyer, solicitor
<b>abraçar</b>	to hug, embrace	<b>aeromoça (f)</b>	(Br) air hostess
<b>abrir</b>	to open	<b>aeroporto (m)</b>	airport
<b>acabar (de)</b>	to finish (to have just)	<b>afastar</b>	to remove, to keep away
<b>acampar</b>	to camp	<b>aficionado (m)</b>	fan, enthusiast
<b>aceitar</b>	to accept	<b>afinal</b>	at last, finally
<b>acenar</b>	to wave (hand), to nod (head)	<b>agarrar</b>	to seize, grasp
<b>acender</b>	to light, to switch on	<b>agência (f)</b>	agency
<b>achar</b>	to find, to dis- cover, to think	<b>agência de correio</b>	(Br) post office
<b>acima</b>	above	<b>agenda (f)</b>	diary
<b>acontecer</b>	to happen	<b>agir</b>	to act, to behave
<b>acordo (m)</b>	agreement	<b>agora</b>	now
<b>açougue (m)</b>	(Br) butcher's (shop)	<b>agradável</b>	pleasant
<b>acreditar</b>	to believe	<b>agradecer</b>	to thank, to be grateful for
<b>adeus</b>	goodbye	<b>água (f)</b>	water
<b>adiamento (m)</b>	postponement, advance	<b>aguardar</b>	to await
		<b>aguardente (f)</b>	brandy
		<b>áí</b>	there
		<b>AIDS (f)</b>	(Br) AIDS
		<b>ainda</b>	still, yet, even
		<b>ajuda (f)</b>	help
		<b>ajudar</b>	to help

<b>albergaria</b> (f)	inn
<b>alcançar</b>	to reach
<b>alegre</b>	cheerful
<b>além</b>	over there, beyond
<b>além disso</b>	moreover
<b>alface</b> (f)	lettuce
<b>alfândega</b> (f)	customs
<b>algo</b>	something
<b>algodão</b> (m)	cotton
<b>alguém</b>	someone, some- body
<b>algum/a</b>	some, any
<b>alguma coisa</b>	something
<b>alho</b> (m)	garlic
<b>ali</b>	there
<b>alias</b>	besides, otherwise
<b>almoçar</b>	to lunch
<b>almoço</b> (m)	lunch
<b>alto</b>	tall
<b>altura</b> (f)	height
<b>alugar</b>	to rent, to hire
<b>amanhã</b>	tomorrow
<b>amar</b>	to love
<b>amável</b>	kind
<b>ambiente</b> (m)	atmosphere
<b>ambos</b>	both
<b>amigo/a</b> (m/f)	friend
<b>amor</b> (m)	to love
<b>andar</b>	to go, to walk
<b>andar</b> (m)	floor
<b>angolano</b>	Angolan
<b>aniversário</b> (m)	anniversary
<b>ano</b> (m)	year
<b>antena</b> (f)	aerial
<b>antes</b>	before, rather
<b>anúncio</b> (m)	advertisement
<b>ao (a + o)</b>	to the, at the
<b>apagar</b>	to put out, to extinguish
<b>apanhar</b>	to catch
<b>apartamento</b> (m)	flat, apartment
<b>após</b>	after
<b>aprender</b>	to learn
<b>apresentar</b>	to introduce
<b>aquele/a</b>	that, that one
<b>aqui</b>	here
<b>ar</b> (m)	air
<b>árbitro</b> (m)	referee
<b>arena</b> (f)	ring, arena
<b>artista</b> (m/f)	artist
<b>árvore</b> (m)	tree
<b>ascensor</b> (m)	lift, elevator
<b>assim</b>	thus, like this
<b>assinar</b>	to sign
<b>assunto</b> (m)	subject, matter
<b>attach;</b>	attachment
<b>attachment</b>	(in e-mail)
<b>até</b>	up to, as far as, until
<b>até logo</b>	so long
<b>aterragem</b> (f)	(Pt) landing (aeroplane)
<b>aterrissagem</b> (f)	(Br) landing (aeroplane)
<b>atirar</b>	to throw, shoot
<b>atrás</b>	behind
<b>atrasado</b>	late
<b>atravessar</b>	to cross
<b>autocarro</b> (m)	(Pt) bus
<b>auto-estrada</b> (f)	(Pt) motorway
<b>automóvel</b> (m)	car
<b>avariado</b>	out of order, broken
<b>avião</b> (m)	aeroplane
<b>bacalhau</b> (m)	dried, salted cod
<b>bagagem</b> (f)	luggage, baggage
<b>bagunça</b> (f)	(Br) mess
<b>bairro</b> (m)	district, suburb
<b>baixo</b>	low, short
<b>balcão</b> (m)	balcony, circle (theatre)

<b>baliza</b> (f)	net, goal
<b>bancada</b> (f)	row of seats (outdoors)
<b>banco</b> (m)	bank
<b>banho</b> (m)	bath
<b>barato</b>	cheap
<b>barba</b> (f)	beard
<b>barco</b> (m)	boat
<b>barulho</b> (m)	noise
<b>bastante</b>	enough, quite
<b>bate-papo</b> (m)	(Br) chat
<b>bater papo</b>	(Br) to chat
<b>bêbedo</b>	drunk
<b>beber</b>	to drink
<b>bebida</b> (f)	drink
<b>beira-mar</b> (f)	seaside
<b>bem</b>	well, quite, good
<b>bem vindo</b>	welcome
<b>bens</b> (mpl)	goods, belongings
<b>biblioteca</b> (f)	library
<b>bica</b> (f)	(Pt) strong black coffee
<b>bicha</b> (f)	(Pt) queue
<b>bilhete</b> (m)	ticket
<b>biscoito</b> (m)	biscuit
<b>blusa</b> (f)	blouse
<b>boa</b> (adj f)	good
<b>bocadinho</b> (m)	a little bit, a little while
<b>bola</b> (f)	ball
<b>bolacha</b> (f)	biscuit
<b>bole</b> (m)	cake
<b>bolsa</b> (f)	(Br) handbag; (Pt) purse, pouch
<b>bolso</b> (m)	pocket
<b>bom/boa</b>	good, nice, kind
<b>bonde</b> (m)	(Br) tram
<b>borracha</b> (f)	rubber
<b>braço</b> (m)	arm
<b>brasileiro/a</b>	Brazilian
<b>breve</b>	short, brief, light
<b>brincar</b>	to have fun, to play a joke
<b>brinquedo</b> (m)	toy
<b>buraco</b> (m)	hole
<b>burro</b> (m)	donkey
<b>buscar</b>	to go for, to fetch
<b>buzina</b> (f)	horn
<b>cá</b>	here
<b>cabeça</b> (f)	head
<b>cabeleireiro/a</b>	hairdresser
<b>cabelo</b> (m)	hair
<b>cachaça</b> (f)	(Br) rum
<b>cachorro</b> (m)	(Pt) puppy; (Br) dog
<b>cada</b>	each
<b>cada um/a</b>	each one
<b>cadeira</b> (f)	chair
<b>café</b> (m)	coffee, café
<b>café da manhã</b>	(Br) breakfast
<b>cair</b>	to fall down
<b>caixa</b>	cash point
	<b>automática</b>
<b>caixa de correio</b>	letterbox
<b>calar</b>	to keep quiet
<b>calçar</b>	to put on (shoes, gloves)
<b>calças</b> (fpl)	trousers
<b>caldeirada</b> (f)	(Pt) fish stew
<b>caldo verde</b> (m)	(Pt) cabbage soup
<b>calor</b> (m)	warmth, heat
<b>cama</b> (f)	bed
<b>camarote</b> (m)	cabin (ship), box (theatre)
<b>câmbio</b> (m)	foreign exchange
<b>caminho</b> (m)	path, way
<b>caminho de</b>	(Pt) railway
<b>ferro</b> (m)	
<b>camioneta</b> (f)	coach
<b>camisa</b> (f)	shirt
<b>camisola</b> (f)	(Pt) sweater
<b>campismo</b> (m)	(Pt) camping

<b>campo</b> (m)	field	<b>chave</b> (f)	key
<b>canal</b> (m)	channel (TV)	<b>chávena</b> (f)	(Pt) cup
<b>caneta</b> (f)	pen	<b>chegar</b>	to arrive, to be enough
<b>cansado</b>	tired	<b>cheio</b>	full
<b>cansar-se de</b>	to tire of	<b>cheirar</b>	to smell
<b>cantar</b>	to sing	<b>choroso</b>	tearful
<b>cão</b> (m)	dog	<b>chouriço</b> (m)	(Pt) spicy smoked sausage
<b>cara</b> (f)	face	<b>chover</b>	to rain
<b>cardápio</b> (m)	menu	<b>chumbo</b> (m)	lead (sem) (unleaded)
<b>carne</b> (f)	meat	<b>chutar</b>	to kick
<b>caro</b>	dear, expensive	<b>chuva</b> (f)	rain
<b>carro</b> (m)	car	<b>chuveiro</b> (m)	shower
<b>carta</b> (f)	letter	<b>cidade</b> (f)	city
<b>cartão</b> (m)	card, cardboard	<b>cinema</b> (m)	cinema
<b>cartaz</b> (m)	poster	<b>claro</b>	bright, clear
<b>carteira</b> (f)	wallet	<b>claro!</b>	right!, of course!
<b>carteiro</b> (m)	postman	<b>cobrir</b>	to cover, to conceal
<b>casa</b> (f)	home, house	<b>código</b> (m)	code, postal/ telephone code
<b>casado</b>	married	<b>coisa</b> (f)	thing
<b>casal</b> (m)	couple	<b>coitado!</b>	how unfortunate!
<b>casamento</b> (m)	marriage, wedding	<b>com</b>	with
<b>cedo</b>	soon, early	<b>comboio</b> (m)	(Pt) train
<b>celular</b> (m)	mobile phone	<b>começar</b>	to begin
<b>cem</b>	hundred	<b>comer</b>	to eat
<b>cento</b> (m)  <b>(e um)</b>	hundred (and one)	<b>comida</b> (f)	food
<b>cerca</b> (de)	around	<b>comigo</b>	with me
<b>certeza</b> (f)	certainty	<b>como</b>	as, like
<b>com certeza</b>	certainly	<b>como?</b>	what?
<b>certo</b>	certain	<b>comprar</b>	to buy
<b>cerveja</b> (f)	beer	<b>compras</b> (fpl)	shopping
<b>chá</b> (m)	tea	<b>compreender</b>	to understand
<b>chaleira</b> (f)	kettle	<b>comprido</b>	long
<b>chamada</b> (f)	call	<b>computador</b> (m)	computer
<b>chamar</b>	to call, (of telephone)	<b>concluir</b>	to conclude, to end
<b>chamar-se</b>	to be called	<b>concurso</b> (m)	competition
<b>chão</b> (m)	ground	<b>conduzir</b>	to drive
<b>charutaria</b> (f)	tobacconist's (shop)		
<b>chatice</b> (f)	nuisance		

<b>conhecer</b>	to know (someone/place)	<b>demasiado</b>	too much
<b>consertar</b>	to repair	<b>demora</b> (f)	delay
<b>constipação</b> (f)	(Pt) cold	<b>dente</b> (m)	tooth
<b>consultório</b> (m)	surgery	<b>dentista</b> (m/f)	dentist
<b>conta</b> (f)	bill	<b>dentro</b> (de)	inside
<b>correio</b> (m)	post office, mail	<b>depois</b> (de)	afterwards, next
<b>correr</b>	to run	<b>depósito</b> (m)	deposit, petrol tank (in car)
<b>corrida</b> (f)	race, bullfight	<b>descansar</b>	to rest
<b>cotação</b> (f)	rate	<b>descer</b>	to go, to come down
<b>couro</b> (m)	leather	<b>desculpa</b> (f)	excuse, apology
<b>cozinha</b> (f)	kitchen	<b>desculpe!</b>	excuse me!
<b>cozinhar</b>	to cook	<b>desde</b>	since, from
<b>criança</b> (f)	child	<b>desejar</b>	to want, to wish, to desire
<b>cuidado</b> (m)	care; worry	<b>desenho</b>	cartoon
<b>cuidado!</b>	look out!	<b>animado</b> (m)	
<b>cuidar de</b>	to take care of, to look after	<b>desligar</b>	to hang up (telephone)
<b>cujo/a</b>	whose, of which	<b>despedida</b> (f)	farewell
<b>cumprimentar</b>	to greet	<b>despesa</b> (f)	expense
<b>cumprir</b>	to fulfil, to carry out	<b>deste</b>	of this, from this
<b>curto</b>	brief, short	<b>(de + este)</b>	
<b>custar</b>	to cost	<b>desvio</b> (m)	diversion
<b>custo</b> (m)	price, cost	<b>detestar</b>	to hate
<b>da (de + a)</b>	of, from the	<b>detrás</b>	behind
<b>dar</b>	to give	<b>devagar</b>	slowly
<b>dantes</b>	before, formerly	<b>dia</b> (m)	day
<b>data</b> (f)	date	<b>diante de</b>	in front of
<b>de</b>	of, from	<b>difícil</b>	difficult
<b>debaixo</b> (de)	below, under- neath	<b>dinheiro</b> (m)	money
<b>decreto</b>	certainly	<b>direita:</b>	on the right of,
<b>decidir</b>	to decide	<b>à direita de</b>	to the right of
<b>declarar</b>	to declare	<b>direito</b>	right-hand, straight
<b>decolagem</b> (f)	take off	<b>disco rígido</b> (m)	hard disc
<b>dedo</b> (m)	finger	<b>disquete</b> (m)	floppy disk
<b>deitar</b>	to lie down	<b>divertir-se</b>	to enjoy oneself
<b>deitar-se</b>	to go to bed	<b>dizer</b>	to say, to tell
<b>deixar</b>	to leave, to abandon	<b>do (de + o)</b>	from the, of the
		<b>doença</b> (f)	illness

<b>doer</b>	to hurt, to ache	<b>encerrar</b>	to lock up
<b>dona (f)</b>	owner	<b>encher</b>	to fill up
<b>dona de casa</b>	housewife	<b>encontrar</b>	to find, to meet
<b>dono (m)</b>	owner	<b>encostar</b>	to lean against
<b>dormir</b>	to sleep	<b>enfim</b>	at last
<b>onde</b>	from where <b>(de + onde)</b>	<b>enganar-se</b>	to be mistaken
<b>dor (f)</b>	pain	<b>engarrafamento</b>	traffic jam
<b>download (m)</b>	(to) download		(m)
<b>duplo</b>	double	<b>engolir</b>	to swallow
<b>durante</b>	during	<b>enjoado</b>	sick
<b>durar</b>	to last	<b>enorme</b>	huge
<b>dúvida (f)</b>	doubt	<b>enquanto</b>	while
<b>dúzia (f)</b>	dozen	<b>no entanto</b>	yet, however
<b>e</b>	and	<b>então</b>	then
<b>é</b>	he, she, it is, you are	<b>entender</b>	to understand
<b>écran (m)</b>	(Pt) screen	<b>entrada (f)</b>	entrance, entry, doorway
<b>edifício (m)</b>	building	<b>entrar</b>	to come, to go in, to enter
<b>editoração</b>	desktop publishing	<b>entrar na Net</b>	to access the Net
<b>eletrônica (f)</b>		<b>entre</b>	between, among
<b>ela</b>	she, it	<b>entrega (f)</b>	delivery
<b>ele</b>	he, it	<b>entretanto</b>	meanwhile
<b>eléctrico (m)</b>	(Pt) tram	<b>entrevista (f)</b>	interview
<b>elevador (m)</b>	lift	<b>envergonhado</b>	ashamed
<b>em</b>	in, on, at	<b>equipe (f)</b>	team
<b>email (m)</b>	e-mail	<b>errado</b>	wrong, mistaken
<b>embarcar</b>	to go on board, to embark	<b>erro (m)</b>	mistake
<b>embora</b>	although, though	<b>escada (f)</b>	staircase, step
<b>empregado/a</b>	employee, clerk; (Pt) waiter, waitress	<b>escanear</b>	to scan
<b>emprego (m)</b>	job	<b>esconder</b>	to hide
<b>empresa (f)</b>	firm, enterprise	<b>escrever</b>	to write
<b>emprestar</b>	to loan, to lend	<b>escritório (m)</b>	office
<b>empurrar</b>	to push	<b>esgotado</b>	sold out
<b>encaixe (m)</b>	socket	<b>esperar</b>	to wait, to hope
<b>encanador (m)</b>	plumber	<b>esporte (m)</b>	sport
<b>encantado</b>	delighted, charmed	<b>esquecer</b>	to forget
		<b>esquerda:</b>	on the left of,
		<b>à esquerda de</b>	to the left of
		<b>esquerdo</b>	left
		<b>esquina (f)</b>	corner
		<b>estaçao (f)</b>	station, season

<b>estacionar</b>	to park	<b>fechar</b>	to close
<b>Estados Unidos</b>	USA	<b>feio</b>	ugly
	(mpl)	<b>feliz</b>	happy
<b>estar</b>	to be	<b>feriado (m)</b>	holiday
<b>este (m)</b>	east	<b>férias (fpl)</b>	holidays
<b>este/a</b>	this	<b>festa (f)</b>	party
<b>estes/estas</b>	these	<b>ficar</b>	to stay, to become, to be
<b>estrada (f)</b>	road	<b>ficha (f)</b>	token, (index) card
<b>estrada de ferro</b> (Br)	railway	<b>fila (f)</b>	line, row; (Br) queue
<b>estudar</b>	to study	<b>filho/a</b>	son/daughter
<b>eu</b>	I	<b>filhos</b>	children
<b>evidente</b>	evident	<b>filmar</b>	to film
<b>evitar</b>	to avoid, to prevent	<b>filme (m)</b>	film
<b>explicar</b>	to explain	<b>fim (m)</b>	end
<b>exportação (f)</b>	export(ing)	<b>flores virtuais (f)</b>	virtual flowers
<b>exterior (m)</b>	outside, exterior	<b>folha (f)</b>	sheet, leaf
<b>extinguir</b>	to put out (fire)	<b>fome (f)</b>	hunger
<b>extrato (m)</b>	extract	<b>fone (m)</b>	receiver (telephone)
<b>extrato de conta</b>	bank statement	<b>fora</b>	outside
<b>extrovertido</b>	extrovert	<b>fornecer</b>	to supply
		<b>fósforos (mpl)</b>	matches
<b>fábrica (f)</b>	factory	<b>fraco</b>	weak
<b>faca (f)</b>	knife	<b>freguês (m), freguesa (f)</b>	customer, client
<b>face (f)</b>	face	<b>freio (m)</b>	(Br) brake
<b>fácil</b>	easy	<b>frete (f)</b>	front
<b>fatura (f)</b>	invoice, bill	<b>em frente de</b>	opposite
<b>falador</b>	talkative	<b>fresco</b>	cool
<b>falar</b>	to talk, to speak	<b>frio</b>	cold
<b>faltar</b>	to be lacking, to miss	<b>fronteira (f)</b>	frontier, border
<b>farmácia (f)</b>	chemist's (shop)	<b>fruta (f)</b>	fruit
<b>farol (m)</b>	lighthouse, headlamp (car)	<b>frutaria (f)</b>	fruit shop
		<b>fumo (m)</b>	smoke
<b>farto</b>	fed up	<b>funcionário (m)</b>	official, civil servant
<b>fatia (f)</b>	slice	<b>fundido</b>	fused
<b>fato (m)</b>	(Pt) suit	<b>fundo</b>	deep
<b>favor (m)</b>	favour		
<b>faz favor</b>	please		
<b>fazer</b>	to make, to do		
<b>fechado</b>	closed		

<b>furo</b> (m)	hole, puncture
<b>fusível</b> (m)	fuse
<b>futebol</b> (m)	football
<b>futuro</b> (m)	future
<b>gabinete</b> (m)	office, study
<b>gama</b> (f)	scale, range
<b>ganhar</b>	to win, to earn, to gain
<b>garagem</b> (f)	garage
<b>garçom</b> (m)	(Br) waiter
<b>garfo</b> (m)	fork
<b>gargalhada</b> (f)	burst of laughter
<b>garganta</b> (f)	throat
<b>garoto</b> (m)	boy, kid; (Pt) small white coffee
<b>garrafa</b> (f)	bottle
<b>gasóleo</b> (m)	(Pt) diesel oil
<b>gasolina</b> (f)	petrol
<b>gastar</b>	to spend
<b>gastos</b> (mpl)	expenses, costs
<b>gatuno</b> (m)	thief
<b>gelado</b> (m)	chilled
<b>gelar</b>	to freeze
<b>gelo</b> (m)	ice
<b>gente</b> (f)	people
<b>geral</b>	general
<b>em geral</b>	generally
<b>gerência</b> (f)	management
<b>gerente</b> (m/f)	manager
<b>giro</b> (m and adj)	turn; (Pt) cute, pretty, terrific
<b>gol</b> (m)	(Br) goal
<b>golo</b> (m)	(Pt) goal
<b>gordo</b>	fat
<b>gorjeta</b> (f)	tip
<b>gostar de</b>	to like
<b>gosto</b> (m)	taste
<b>gota</b> (f)	drop
<b>graça</b> (f)	charm, joke, grace

<b>grama</b> (m)	gramme; (Br) grass
<b>grande</b>	big, large
<b>grátis</b>	free
<b>grato/a</b>	grateful
<b>grau</b> (m)	degree, level
<b>greve</b> (f)	strike
<b>gripe</b> (f)	'flu
<b>grosso</b>	thick, rough
<b>grupo</b> (m)	group
<b>guarda-chuva</b> (m)	umbrella
<b>guardanapo</b> (m)	napkin
<b>guarda-roupa</b> (m)	wardrobe
<b>guardar</b>	to keep, to watch over
<b>guitarra</b> (f)	(Pt) guitar
<b>há</b>	there is, there are, ago
<b>habitação</b> (f)	dwelling
<b>haver</b>	to have
<b>hipoteca</b> (f)	mortgage
<b>história</b> (f)	story, history
<b>hoje</b>	today
<b>homem</b> (m)	man
<b>hora</b> (f)	hour, time
<b>horário</b> (m)	timetable
<b>hospedeira</b> (f)	(Pt) air hostess
<b>hospital</b> (m)	hospital
<b>hotel</b> (m)	hotel
<b>humor</b> (m)	mood, humour
<b>ida</b> (f)	departure, single (ticket)
<b>ida e volta</b>	return ticket
<b>idade</b> (f)	age
<b>igual</b>	equal
<b>imediatamente</b>	immediately
<b>impedido</b>	(Pt) engaged (telephone)
<b>importação</b> (f)	importing, import
<b>importar</b>	to import

<b>impossível</b>	impossible
<b>impressora</b> (f)	printer
<b>incluir</b>	to include
<b>incomodar</b>	to annoy, to bother
<b>indicativo</b> (m)	(Pt) area code, international code (telephone)
<b>indigestão</b> (f)	indigestion
<b>informática</b> (f)	computing
<b>ingresso</b> (m)	ticket
<b>interessante</b>	interesting
<b>interior</b> (m)	inside, interior
<b>interromper</b>	to interrupt
<b>intervalo</b> (m)	interval
<b>introduzir</b>	to introduce
<b>inútil</b>	useless
<b>inverno</b> (m)	winter
<b>investimento</b> (m)	investment
<b>ir</b>	to go
<b>ir-se embora</b>	to go away
<b>isqueiro</b> (m)	lighter
<b>isso</b>	that, that thing
<b>por isso</b>	therefore
<b>isto</b>	this, this thing
<b>já</b>	already, now, right now
<b>jamais</b>	never
<b>janela</b> (f)	window
<b>jantar</b> (m)	dinner
<b>jantar</b>	to dine
<b>jardim</b> (m)	garden
<b>jeito</b> (m)	knack, skill
<b>dar jeito</b>	to be convenient
<b>joelho</b> (m)	knee
<b>jogging</b> (m)	jogging
<b>fazer jogging</b>	to jog
<b>jogo</b> (m)	game
<b>jornal</b> (m)	newspaper
<b>jovem</b>	youth, young
	(m and adj)

<b>lista</b> (f)	directory (telephone), list	<b>meio-quilo</b>	half a kilo
<b>livraria</b> (f)	bookshop	<b>meio-ambiente</b> (m)	environment
<b>livro</b> (m)	book	<b>melhor</b>	better
<b>locutor</b> (m)	radio announcer	<b>menino/a</b>	boy/girl
<b>logo</b>	then, soon, later, right away	<b>menor</b>	smaller, smallest, minor
<b>longe</b>	far, far away	<b>mercearia</b> (f)	grocer's (shop)
<b>loteria</b> (f)	lottery	<b>mesa</b> (f)	table
<b>louça</b> (f)	crockery	<b>mesmo</b>	same
<b>lua</b> (f)	moon	<b>metade</b> (f)	half, middle
<b>lugar</b> (m)	place, space	<b>metrô</b> (m)	underground
<b>luxo</b> (m)	luxury	<b>meu/minha</b>	my, mine
<b>luz</b> (f)	light	<b>mídia</b> (f)	media
<b>ma (me +a)</b>	it to me	<b>mim</b>	me
<b>má</b> (adj f)	bad, evil	<b>minha</b>	my, mine
<b>macio</b>	soft, smooth	<b>minuto</b> (m)	minute
<b>maço</b> (m)	packet (cigarettes)	<b>mo (me +o)</b>	it to me
<b>mãe</b> (f)	mother	<b>moçambicano</b>	Mozambican
<b>magro</b>	thin	<b>moça</b> (f)	girl
<b>maior</b>	bigger	<b>moda</b> (f)	fashion
<b>maioria</b> (f)	majority	<b>modem</b> (m)	modem
<b>mais</b>	more	<b>modo</b> (m)	way, manner
<b>mala</b> (f)	suitcase	<b>montra</b> (f)	(Pt) shop window
<b>mamãe</b> (f)	(Br) mum	<b>morar</b>	to stay (place), to reside
<b>mandar</b>	to send	<b>mos (me + os)</b>	them to me
<b>maneira</b> (f)	way, manner	<b>mostrar</b>	to show
<b>manhã</b> (f)	morning	<b>muito</b>	a lot of, many; very
<b>manter</b>	to maintain	<b>mulher</b> (f)	woman, wife
<b>mapa</b> (m)	map, chart	<b>música</b> (f)	music
<b>mar</b> (m)	sea		
<b>marca</b> (f)	brand, make		
<b>marisco</b> (m)	shellfish		
<b>mas (me + as)</b>	them to me	<b>na (em +a)</b>	in the, on the
<b>mau/má</b>	bad, evil	<b>nada</b>	nothing
<b>medicamento</b> (m)	medicine	<b>nadar</b>	to swim
<b>médico</b> (m)	doctor	<b>não</b>	no, not
<b>medida</b> (f)	size, measurement	<b>nas (em + as)</b>	at the (fpl)
<b>medir</b>	to measure	<b>nascer</b>	to be born
<b>meio</b> (m)	half	<b>Natal</b> (m)	Christmas
		<b>navegador</b> (m)	browser

<b>navegar na Net</b>	to surf the Net	<b>onde</b>	where
<b>necessário</b>	necessary	<b>ônibus</b> (m)	(Br) bus
<b>negócio</b> (m)	business, transaction	<b>ontem</b>	yesterday
<b>nem</b>	neither, nor	<b>ótimo</b>	(Pt) great
<b>nenhum/a</b>	none, not one/any	<b>orçamento</b> (m)	budget
<b>nesse/a</b>	in that	<b>ordenado</b>	salary, in order
<b>(em + esse)</b>		<b>ordenar</b>	to order
<b>nesses/as</b>	in those	<b>organização</b> (f)	organization
<b>(em + esses/as)</b>		<b>osso</b> (m)	bone
<b>neste/a</b>	in this	<b>OTAN</b>	NATO
<b>(em + este)</b>		<b>ótimo</b>	(Br) great
<b>nestes/as</b>	in these	<b>ou</b>	or
<b>(em + estes/as)</b>		<b>outono</b> (m)	autumn
<b>ninguém</b>	nobody	<b>outro</b>	another
<b>no (em + o)</b>	in the, on the	<b>outrora</b>	formerly, a long time ago
<b>norte</b> (m)	north	<b>ouvir</b>	to hear
<b>nos<sup>1</sup></b>	us, to us	<b>pá</b> (f)	shovel; (Pt) pal; mate
<b>nos<sup>2</sup> (em + os)</b>	in the/at the (mpl)	<b>pacote</b> (m)	parcel
<b>nós</b>	we	<b>pagar</b>	to pay
<b>notícia</b> (f)	piece of news	<b>pagina da</b>	Web page
<b>noticiário</b> (m)	radio news	<b>Web</b> (f)	
<b>notícias</b>	news	<b>pai</b> (m)	father
<b>novela</b> (f)	soap opera	<b>pais</b>	parents
<b>novo</b>	new, young	<b>palco</b> (m)	stage
<b>nublado</b>	cloudy	<b>pano</b> (m)	cloth
<b>nunca</b>	never	<b>papai</b> (m)	(Br) dad
<b>nuvem</b> (f)	cloud	<b>par</b> (m)	pair
		<b>para</b>	for, towards
<b>obra/s</b> (f)	work(s), repairs	<b>parar</b>	to stop
<b>obrigação</b> (f)	obligation	<b>partir</b>	to leave
<b>obrigado/a</b>	thank you, obliged	<b>Páscoa</b> (f)	Easter
<b>ocasião</b> (f)	occasion, opportunity	<b>passar</b>	to pass, to spend (time); to iron
<b>óculos</b> (mpl)	glasses	<b>passatempo</b> (m)	pastime, hobby
<b>ocupado</b>	engaged	<b>passear</b>	to walk
		<b>pasta</b> (f)	briefcase
<b>oeste</b> (m)	(telephone)	<b>pasta de dentes</b>	toothpaste
<b>oferecer</b>	west	<b>pastelaria</b> (f)	pastry shop/snack bar
<b>olhar</b>	to offer		

<b>patrão</b> (m)	boss, landlord	<b>precisar de</b>	to need
<b>patroa</b> (f)	landlady	<b>preço</b> (m)	price
<b>PC</b> (m)	PC (personal computer)	<b>prédio</b> (m)	building
<b>peça</b> (f)	piece, part, play (theatre)	<b>prestar</b>	to be of use
<b>pedir</b>	to ask for	<b>pretender</b>	to intend
<b>pegar</b>	to catch	<b>primavera</b> (f)	spring
<b>pele</b> (f)	skin	<b>procurar</b>	to look for
<b>pelo/a</b>	for, through, (por + o/a)	<b>proibido</b>	forbidden
<b>pena</b> (f)	by the suffering, pity	<b>provar</b>	to taste, to try on (clothes)
<b>que pena!</b>	what a shame!	<b>provedor de acesso</b> (m)	access provider
<b>pensar</b>	to think	<b>próximo</b>	near, close, next
<b>pequeno-</b>	(Pt) breakfast	<b>puxar</b>	to pull
<b>almoço</b> (m)		<b>quadro</b> (m)	picture, painting
<b>perguntar</b>	to ask	<b>qual</b> (pl <b>quais</b> )	which, who
<b>perto</b>	nearby	<b>qualquer</b>	any, anyone
<b>péssimo</b>	awful	<b>quantia</b> (f)	sum, amount
<b>pior</b>	worse	<b>quantidade</b> (f)	quantity
<b>o pior</b>	the worst	<b>quanto</b>	how much, all that
<b>pista</b> (f)	track, trail	<b>quase</b>	almost
<b>platéia</b> (f)	stalls (theatre)	<b>que</b>	who, that, which
<b>pneu</b> (m)	tyre	<b>que azar!</b>	that's unfortunate!
<b>pó</b> (m)	powder	<b>quê!?</b>	what!?
<b>pois bem</b>	well then, so	<b>queixa</b> (f)	complaint
<b>política</b> (f)	politics	<b>queixar</b>	to complain
<b>pontapé</b> (m)	kick	<b>quem</b>	who (m)
<b>ponte</b> (f)	bridge	<b>quente</b>	warm
<b>por</b>	for	<b>querer</b>	to want
<b>por favor</b>	please	<b>questão</b> (f)	question
<b>pôr</b>	to put	<b>quilo</b> (m)	kilo
<b>porcaria</b> (f)	(Pt) rubbish, mess	<b>quilômetro</b> (m)	kilometre
<b>porque</b>	because	<b>quinze dias</b> (m)	fortnight
<b>por que?</b>	why?	<b>quotidiano</b>	everyday
<b>porta</b> (f)	door	<b>rádio</b> (m)	radio, radio station
<b>portanto</b>	therefore	<b>rapaz</b> (m)	boy
<b>possível</b>	possible		
<b>pouco</b>	little, few		
<b>praça</b> (f)	square, market		
<b>prato</b> (m)	plate, dish		
<b>prazer</b> (m)	pleasure		

<b>rapidez</b> (f)	speed	<b>rico</b>	rich
<b>raramente</b>	seldom	<b>rir</b>	to laugh
<b>raso</b>	flat, low	<b>rodovia</b> (f)	(Br) motorway
<b>razão</b> (f)	reason	<b>rodoviária</b> (f)	bus station
<b>realmente</b>	really, actually	<b>romper</b>	to break
<b>recado</b> (m)	message	<b>rossio</b> (m)	large square
<b>recear</b>	to fear	<b>roto</b>	torn, burst
<b>receita</b> (f)	recipe, prescription, income	<b>roupa</b> (f)	clothes
		<b>rua</b> (f)	street
		<b>ruído</b> (m)	noise
<b>recibo</b> (m)	receipt		
<b>recolher</b>	to collect	<b>sã</b> (adj f)	healthy, sound
<b>reconhecer</b>	to recognize	<b>saber</b>	to know (facts)
<b>recreação</b> (f)	fun, recreation	<b>sabor</b> (m)	taste, flavour
<b>recusar</b>	to refuse	<b>sacar</b>	to take out
<b>rede</b>	net, goal	<b>saca-rolhas</b> (m)	corkscrew
<b>rede</b> (f)	Net (Internet)	<b>saco</b> (m)	bag
<b>refeição</b> (f)	meal	<b>saia</b> (f)	skirt
<b>regressar</b>	to come, to go back	<b>saída</b> (f)	exit
<b>regresso</b> (m)	return	<b>sair</b>	to go out
<b>relógio</b> (m)	clock, watch	<b>sal</b> (m)	salt
<b>remédio</b> (m)	remedy; medicine	<b>sala de chat</b> (f)	chat room (on Internet)
<b>remoto</b>	remote	<b>saltar</b>	to jump
<b>renda</b> (f)	income	<b>sanduíche</b> (m)	sandwich
<b>rentabilidade</b>	profitability	<b>são/sã</b>	healthy, sound
		<b>sapataria</b> (f)	shoe shop
<b>repousar</b>	to rest	<b>saudade</b> (f)	longing
<b>reprovar</b>	to fail	<b>saudades</b>	regards (letter)
<b>rés-do-chão</b> (m) (Pt)	ground floor	<b>saudável</b>	healthy
<b>resfriado</b> (m)	cold	<b>scanner</b> (m)	scanner
<b>resolver</b>	to solve, to decide	<b>se</b>	if, whether
<b>respeito</b> (m)	respect	<b>secar</b>	to dry
<b>a/com</b>	with regard to	<b>sede</b> (f)	thirst
		<b>secretária</b> (f)	secretary, writing desk
<b>respeito de</b>		<b>seguido</b>	following
<b>respirar</b>	to breathe	<b>segunda-mão</b>	second hand
<b>responder</b>	to reply	<b>sem essa!</b>	come off it!
<b>ressaca</b> (f)	hangover	<b>semana</b> (f)	week
<b>resto</b> (m)	rest	<b>semáforos</b> (mpl)	traffic lights
<b>reunião</b> (f)	meeting	<b>semelhança</b> (f)	similarity
<b>revista</b> (f)	magazine		

<b>sempre</b>	always, still, yet	<b>talho</b> (m)	(Pt) butcher's (shop)
<b>senão</b>	if not, otherwise	<b>talvez</b>	perhaps
<b>sentar-se</b>	to sit down	<b>tamanho</b> (m)	size
<b>sentir-se</b>	to feel (happy, etc.)	<b>também</b>	too, also
<b>separar</b>	to separate	<b>tanto</b>	so much, many
<b>ser</b>	to be	<b>tão</b>	so
<b>serra</b> (f)	mountain range/ saw	<b>tarde</b> (f)	afternoon
<b>seu/sua</b>	his, her(s), your(s), its, their(s)	<b>tarefa</b> (f)	job, task
<b>SIDA</b> (f)	AIDS	<b>tas (te + as)</b>	them to you (s)
<b>simpático</b>	kind, nice	<b>teclado</b> (m)	keyboard
<b>sindicato</b> (m)	trade union	<b>tecnologia de</b>	information
<b>site</b> (m)	site (on Internet)	<b>informação</b> (f)	technology
<b>só</b>	alone	<b>tela</b> (f)	(Br) screen
<b>sob</b>	under	<b>telemóvel</b> (m)	(Pt) mobile phone
<b>sobre</b>	on, above, over	<b>telenovela</b> (f)	soap opera
<b>sobretudo</b>	above all	<b>televisão</b> (f)	television
<b>socorrer</b>	to help	<b>tempo</b> (m)	time, weather
<b>sofrer</b>	to suffer	<b>tencionar</b>	to intend
<b>sol</b> (m)	sun	<b>ter</b>	to have
<b>solteiro</b>	single	<b>terminar</b>	to finish
<b>sono</b> (m)	sleep	<b>terno</b> (m)	(Br) suit
<b>sorte</b> (f)	luck, chance	<b>terra</b> (f)	earth
<b>sorvete</b> (m)	ice-cream	<b>terreo</b> (m)	ground floor
<b>sozinho</b>	by oneself, alone	<b>to (te + o)</b>	it to you (s)
<b>sua</b>	his, her(s), your(s), (adj & pron f)	<b>toaleta</b> (m)	toilet
<b>subir</b>	its, their(s) to go up	<b>toalha</b> (f)	towel
<b>suco</b> (m)	juice	<b>tocar</b>	to play (music), to ring (telephone), to touch
<b>suéter</b> (m)	(Br) sweater	<b>todavia</b>	still, however
<b>sujo</b>	dirty	<b>todo</b>	all, every
<b>sul</b> (m)	south	<b>tomada</b> (f)	plug (electrical)
<b>suor</b> (m)	sweat	<b>tomara!</b>	let's hope!
<b>supor</b>	to suppose	<b>torneira</b> (f)	tap
<b>ta (te + a)</b>	it to you (s)	<b>tos (te + os)</b>	them to you (s)
<b>tabacaria</b> (f)	tobacconist's (shop)	<b>transeunte</b> (m)	passer-by
<b>tal</b>	such	<b>transitar</b>	to go, to pass through
		<b>trânsito</b> (m)	traffic

<b>tratar</b>	to deal with, to treat	<b>vende-se</b>	for sale
<b>travão</b> (m)	(Pt) brake	<b>ver</b>	to see
<b>trazer</b>	to bring	<b>verão</b> (m)	summer
<b>trem</b> (m)	(Br) train	<b>verdade</b> (f)	truth
<b>triste</b>	sad	<b>vergonha</b> (f)	shame
<b>trocar</b>	to exchange	<b>verificar</b>	to check
<b>troco</b> (m)	change (money)	<b>vestido</b> (m)	dress
<b>tropeçar</b>	to trip	<b>vestir</b>	to dress
<b>tudo</b>	all, everything	<b>vestir-se</b>	to get dressed
<b>turismo</b> (m)	tourism	<b>vez</b> (f)	time, turn
		<b>violão</b> (m)	guitar
<b>ufa!</b>	phew!	<b>vir</b>	to come
<b>úisque</b> (m)	whisky	<b>virar</b>	to turn
<b>ultimamente</b>	lately	<b>vitrine/vitrina</b>	(Br) shop (f) window
<b>um/uma</b>	a, an, one	<b>viva!</b>	hooray!
<b>unir</b>	to join	<b>viver</b>	to live
<b>universidade</b> (f)	university	<b>você (pl vocês)</b>	you
<b>upload</b>	to upload	<b>volta</b> (f)	return, turn, curve
<b>urgente</b>	urgent	<b>voltar</b>	to come back
<b>usado</b>	used, worn	<b>vontade</b> (f)	will
<b>usar</b>	to use	<b>vôo</b> (m)	flight
<b>usuário da</b>	Internet user	<b>voz</b> (f)	voice
	<b>Internet</b> (m)		
<b>útil</b>	useful	<b>Web</b> (f)	Web (on Internet)
<b>vaga</b> (f)	wave, vacancy	<b>xadrez</b> (m)	chess
<b>vago</b>	vacant, vague	<b>xale</b> (m)	shawl
<b>valer</b>	to be worth	<b>xícara</b> (f)	(Br) cup
<b>válido</b>	valid	<b>xixi</b> (m): <b>fazer</b>	to go to the toilet
<b>valor</b> (m)	value, worth	<b>xixi</b>	
<b>vantagem</b> (f)	advantage	<b>zanga</b> (f)	anger
<b>variado</b>	varied	<b>zangar</b>	to annoy
<b>vários</b>	several	<b>zangar-se</b>	to get annoyed
<b>veja bem</b>	now then	<b>zero</b> (m)	nothing, zero
<b>velho</b>	old	<b>zona</b> (f)	zone, area
<b>vencer</b>	to win		
<b>venda</b> (f)	sale		
<b>vender</b>	to sell		

# English–Portuguese glossary

Portuguese (Pt) words are distinguished from Brazilian (Br) words where necessary.

a, an	<b>um, uma</b>	any	<b>qualquer, (pl)</b>
able	<b>capaz</b>		<b>quaisquer</b>
to be able (to)	<b>poder</b>	anybody/	<b>qualquer pessoa</b>
access provider	<b>Provedor de acesso (m)</b>	anyone	
address	<b>endereço (m) (Br); morada (f) (Pt)</b>	anything	<b>algo, alguma coisa</b>
(to) advertise	<b>pôr um anúncio</b>	arrival	<b>chegada (f)</b>
advertisement	<b>anúncio (m)</b>	as	<b>como, tão</b>
after/afterwards	<b>depois de</b>	as much/	<b>tanto/a/os/as</b>
afternoon	<b>tarde (f)</b>	as many	
against	<b>contra</b>	as soon as	<b>tão depressa</b>
(to) agree	<b>concordar, estar de acordo</b>	possible	<b>quanto possível</b>
airport	<b>aeroporto (m)</b>	(to) ask	<b>perguntar</b>
all	<b>todo/a/os/as</b>	at	<b>em, a</b>
(to) allow	<b>permitir, deixar</b>	at last	<b>finalmente</b>
alone	<b>só, sózinho</b>	at least	<b>pelo menos</b>
almost	<b>quase</b>	at once	<b>imediatamente,</b>
already	<b>já</b>		<b>já</b>
also	<b>também</b>	attachment	<b>Attach;</b>
always	<b>sempre</b>	(in e-mail)	<b>attachment (m)</b>
among	<b>entre</b>	away	<b>fora</b>
and	<b>e</b>	far away	<b>muito longe</b>
angry	<b>zangado</b>	awful	<b>horrible, péssimo</b>
(to get become)	<b>zangar-se</b>	bad	<b>mau/má</b>
angry		badly	<b>mal</b>

bag	<b>saco (m), bolsa (f)</b>	breakfast	<b>café (m)</b>
bank	<b>banco (m)</b>		<b>da manhã (Br); pequeno-almoço (m) (Pt)</b>
bathroom	<b>banheiro (m) (Br); casa/sala (f) de banho (Pt)</b>	(to) bring	<b>trazer</b>
	(to) be	browser	<b>Navegador (m)</b>
beach	<b>praia (f)</b>	(to) build	<b>construir,</b>
(to) bear	<b>aguentar,</b>	building	<b>estatura (f)</b>
	<b>suportar</b>	bus	<b>edifício (m)</b>
bed	<b>cama (f)</b>		<b>ônibus (m)</b>
bedroom	<b>quarto (m)</b>	business	<b>(Br); autocarro (m) (Pt)</b>
	<b>de dormir,</b>		<b>negócio (m), negócios (mpl)</b>
	<b>quarto de cama</b>	but	<b>mas</b>
		(to) buy	<b>comprar</b>
beer	<b>cerveja (f)</b>	by	<b>por, através</b>
before	<b>antes de</b>		
(to) begin	<b>começar,</b>	(to) call	<b>chamar</b>
	<b>principiar</b>	to be called	<b>chamar-se</b>
behind	<b>atrás de</b>	can (to be able)	<b>poder</b>
	<b>acreditar, crer</b>	car	<b>automóvel (m), carro (m)</b>
(to) believe	<b>ao lado de</b>	care	<b>cuidado (m)</b>
	<b>beside</b>	between	<b>levar, transportar</b>
	<b>besides</b>	<b>entre</b>	<b>caixa automática</b>
	<b>better</b>	<b>grande</b>	<b>(f) (Br); terminal</b>
	<b>between</b>	<b>conta</b>	<b>caixa (m) (Pt)</b>
	<b>big</b>	<b>dia de anos (m), (Pt) aniversário</b>	<b>cassete (m)</b>
	<b>bill</b>		<b>certamente</b>
	<b>birthday</b>	<b>(m)</b>	<b>com certeza,</b>
		<b>fazer anos,</b>	<b>oportunidade (f)</b>
		<b>aniversário</b>	<b>por acaso</b>
	<b>black</b>	<b>preto, negro</b>	<b>mudar, mudança</b>
		<b>pensão (f)</b>	<b>(f); trocar</b>
	<b>boarding/guest</b>	<b>house</b>	<b>to (ex)change</b>
		<b>both</b>	<b>(money/things),</b>
		<b>bottle</b>	<b>troco (m)</b>
		<b>brandy</b>	<b>change (money)</b>
		<b>bread</b>	<b>Sala de chat (f)</b>
		<b>(to) break</b>	
		<b>breakdown</b>	
		<b>(of car)</b>	
		<b>avaría (f)</b>	
		chat room (on Internet)	
		cheap	<b>barato</b>

chemist's (shop)	<b>farmácia</b> (f)	(to) dine	<b>jantar</b>
(traveller's) cheque	<b>cheque</b> <b>(de viagem)</b> (m)	dinner disk	<b>jantar</b> (m) <b>disquete</b> (m)
child	<b>criança</b> (f)	(floppy disk)	
choice	<b>escolha</b> (f)	(to) do	<b>fazer</b>
(to) choose	<b>escolher</b>	doctor	<b>médico/a; doutor/a</b>
cigarettes	<b>cigarros</b> (mpl)		(academic qualification)
cigars	<b>charutos</b> (mpl)		
city	<b>cidade</b> (f)	(to) download	<b>Download</b> (m)
(to) climb	<b>subir, trepar</b>	(to) dress	<b>vestir-se, vestido</b> (m)
cloudy	<b>nublado</b>		
coach	<b>ônibus</b> (m)	(to) drink	<b>beber, bebida</b> (f)
coat	<b>paletó</b> (m) (Br); <b>casaco</b> (m) (Pt)	driver	<b>motorista</b> (m/f)
coffee	<b>café</b> (m)	driver's licence	<b>carteira de</b> <b>motorista</b> (f)
coin	<b>moeda</b> (f)		(Br); <b>carta de</b>
cold	<b>frio</b> (m)		<b>condução</b> (f) (Pt)
(to) come	<b>vir</b>		
to come in	<b>entrar</b>	each	<b>cada</b>
to come back	<b>voltar</b>	each one	<b>cada qual</b>
(to) complain	<b>queixar-se</b>	each other	<b>um ao outro</b>
complaint	<b>queixa</b> (f)	early	<b>cedo</b>
computer	<b>computador</b> (m)	easily	<b>facilmente</b>
computing	<b>Informática</b> (f)	east	<b>este</b> (m)
(to) continue	<b>continuar</b>	easy	<b>fácil</b>
corner	<b>esquina</b> (f)	(to) eat	<b>comer</b>
(to) cost	<b>custar, custo</b> (m)	either	<b>ou</b>
(to) count	<b>contar</b>	e-mail	<b>email</b> (m)
country	<b>país</b> (m)	emergency	<b>emergência</b> (f)
(to) cover	<b>cobrir</b>	empty	<b>vazio</b>
(to) cross	<b>atravessar</b>	English	<b>inglês</b>
customer	<b>cliente</b> (m/f), <b>freguês/guesa</b>	(to) enjoy	<b>divertir-se, gozar</b>
customs	<b>alfândega</b> (f)	(to) enter	<b>entrar</b>
		environment	<b>meio-ambiente</b> (m)
dark	<b>escuro</b>		<b>igualmente</b>
darkness	<b>escuridão</b> (f)	equally	<b>tarde</b> (f), <b>noite</b> (f)
day	<b>dia</b> (m)	evening	<b>cada</b>
delay	<b>atraso</b> (m)	every	<b>todo o mundo</b> (m)
dentist	<b>dentista</b> (m/f)	everybody	(Br); <b>toda a</b>
departures	<b>partidas</b> (fpl)		<b>gente</b> (f) (Pt)
difficult	<b>difícil</b>		

everyday	<b>todos os dias</b>	for	<b>por, para</b>
everything	<b>tudo</b>	foreign(er)	<b>estrangeiro</b> (m)
except	<b>exceto</b>	(to) forget	<b>esquecer,</b> <b>esquecer-se de</b>
excuse me	<b>faz favor, com</b>	fortnight	<b>quinze dias</b> (mpl), <b>quinzena</b> (f)
	<b>licença, desculpe</b>		<b>felizmente</b>
exhibition	<b>exposição</b> (f)	fortunately	<b>amigo</b> (m)
(to) expect	<b>esperar, contar</b>	friend	<b>de</b>
	<b>com</b>	from	<b>cheio</b>
expenses	<b>despesas</b> (fpl)	full	
(to) explain	<b>explicar</b>		
fabric	<b>tecido</b> (m), <b>pano</b> (m)	gate (airport)	<b>portão</b> (m) de <b>embarque</b>
face value	<b>valor nominal</b> (m)	gentleman	<b>senhor</b> (m), <b>cabalheiro</b> (m)
(to) facilitate	<b>facilitar</b>		<b>arranjar, obter</b>
factory	<b>fábrica</b> (f)	(to) get	<b>levantar-se</b>
(to) fall	<b>cair</b>	(to) get up	<b>dar</b>
far	<b>longe, distante</b>	(to) give	<b>óculos</b> (mpl)
fast	<b>adiantado,</b> <b>depressa</b>	glasses	<b>ir</b>
fat	<b>gordo</b>	(to) go	<b>ir para casa</b>
favour	<b>favor</b> (m)	(to) go home	<b>bom/boa</b>
fax	<b>fax</b> (m)	good	<b>adeus</b>
(to) fear	<b>recear, temer, ter</b>	goodbye	<b>gêneros</b> (mpl)
	<b>medo, medo</b> (m)	goods	<b>grande</b>
(to) feel	<b>sentir, sentir-se</b>	great	<b>ótimo!</b>
(to) fetch	<b>buscar, ir buscar</b>	great!	<b>crescer</b>
few	<b>alguns/algumas/</b>	(to) guess	<b>adivinhar, supor</b>
	<b>uns/umas/</b>		
	<b>poucos/as</b>	hair	<b>cabelo</b> (m)
	<b>encher</b>	half	<b>meio, metade</b> (f)
	<b>achar</b>	(to) happen	<b>acontecer</b>
	<b>acabar, terminar</b>	hard disc	<b>Disco Rígido</b> (m)
	<b>peixe</b> (m)	(to) have	<b>ter</b>
	<b>raso</b>	(to) hear	<b>ouvir</b>
	<b>apartamento</b> (m)	heat	<b>calor</b> (m)
	<b>sabor</b> (m)	heavy	<b>pesado</b>
	<b>vôo</b> (m)	height	<b>altura</b> (f)
	<b>chão</b> (m), <b>andar</b>	(to) help	<b>ajudar, ajuda</b> (f)
	(m)	here	<b>aqui, cá</b>
	<b>nevoeiro</b> (m)	hi!	<b>oi!</b> (Br); <b>olá</b> (Pt)
	<b>seguir</b>	high	<b>alto</b>

hire	<b>aluguel</b> (m) (Br); <b>aluguer</b> (m) (Pt)	juice	<b>suco</b> (m) (Br); <b>sumo</b> (m) (Pt)	(to) live long (to) long for longing (to) look (to) look for (to) lose loud low luck luggage	<b>viver, morar</b> <b>comprido</b> <b>ter saudades de</b> <b>saudades</b> (fpl) <b>olhar</b> <b>procurar, buscar</b> <b>perder</b> <b>alto</b> <b>baixo</b> <b>sorte</b> (f) <b>bagagem</b> (f), <b>malas</b> (fpl)	mouse (in computing) (to) move much my name nationality near nearly (to) need neither Net (Internet) never new news newspaper next nice night no, not nobody noise nor north nothing now oath (to) obey of office often on once only (to) open	<b>mouse</b> (m) <b>mexer-se, mover;</b> <b>mudar de</b> (house) <b>muito</b> <b>o meu/a minha</b> <b>nome</b> (m) <b>nacionalidade</b> (f) <b>perto de</b> <b>quase</b> <b>necessário</b> <b>precisar de</b> <b>nem</b> <b>Rede</b> (f) <b>nunca, jamais</b> <b>nov</b> <b>notícias</b> (fpl) <b>jornal</b> (m) <b>próximo</b> <b>simpático</b> <b>noite</b> (f) <b>não</b> <b>ninguém</b> <b>barulho</b> (m) <b>nem</b> <b>norte</b> (m) <b>nada</b> <b>agora</b> <b>juramento</b> (m) <b>obedecer, cumprir</b> <b>de</b> <b>escritório</b> (m), <b>gabinete</b> (m) <b>muitas vezes</b> <b>em, em cima de,</b> <b>sobre</b> <b>uma vez</b> <b>só, apenas</b> <b>abrir</b>
holiday	<b>feriado</b> (m)	(to be) keen on	<b>gostar de</b> (some- thing algo, somebody				
holidays	<b>férias</b> (fpl)		<b>alguém), ter</b>				
home	<b>casa</b> (f), <b>lar</b> (m)		<b>vontade de</b>				
(to) hope	<b>esperar, esperança</b>						
(f)		(to) keep	<b>guardar</b>				
hot	<b>quente</b>	key	<b>chave</b> (f)				
hour	<b>hora</b> (f)	kind	<b>amável</b>				
house	<b>casa</b> (f)	(to) know	<b>conhecer</b>				
how	<b>como</b>		(people/places),				
however	<b>contudo</b>		<b>saber</b> (facts, etc.)				
hunger	<b>fome</b> (f)	label	<b>etiqueta</b> (f), <b>marca</b>				
hurry	<b>pressa</b> (f)		(f)				
(to) hurt	<b>magoar, ferir</b>	(to) lack	<b>faltar, falta</b> (f)				
		(to) land	<b>aterrizar</b>				
ice	<b>gelo</b> (m)	laptop	<b>Laptop</b> (m)				
identical	<b>idêntico</b>	large	<b>grande</b>				
if	<b>se</b>	last	<b>último</b>				
ill	<b>doente</b>	late	<btarde, atrasado<="" b=""></btarde,>				
immediately	<b>imediatamente</b>	(to) laugh	<b>rir</b>				
important	<b>importante</b>	law	<b>lei</b> (f), <b>direito</b> (m)				
impossible	<b>impossível</b>	(to) learn	<b>aprender</b>				
in	<b>em</b>	(to) leave	<b>partir, sair</b>				
(to) increase	<b>aumentar</b>	less	<b>menos</b>				
information	<b>informação</b> (f)	(to) let	<b>deixar, permitir;</b>				
information	<b>Tecnologia de</b>		<b>alugar</b>				
technology	<b>informação</b> (f)		(house/car)				
Internet user	<b>usuário da</b>	letter	<b>carta</b> (f)				
	<b>Internet</b> (m)	(to) lie down	<b>deitar-se</b>				
(to) introduce	<b>apresentar</b>	life	<b>vida</b> (f)	mobile phone	<b>Cellular</b> (m)	oath	<b>juramento</b> (m)
(to) invite	<b>convidar</b>	(to) lift	<b>levantar, ascensor</b>	(Pt) mobile	<b>telemóvel</b> (m)	(to) obey	<b>obedecer, cumprir</b>
invoice	<b>fatura</b> (f)		(m), <b>elevador</b>	phone		of	
			(m)	modem	<b>Modem</b> (m)	office	
jack (tool)	<b>macaco</b> (m)	to give a lift	<b>dar uma carona</b>	money	<b>dinheiro</b> (m)		
to jack up	<b>levantar com o</b>	(in a vehicle)	(Br); <b>dar uma</b>	month	<b>mês</b> (m), <b>meses</b>	often	
	<b>macaco</b>		<b>boleia</b> (Pt)		(mpl)	on	
jam	<b>geléia</b> (f)	(to) light	<b>acender, luz</b> (f)	more	<b>mais</b>		
janitor	<b>porteiro</b> (m)	(to) like	<b>gostar de</b>	morning	<b>manhã</b> (f)	once	
job	<b>emprego</b> (m)	(to) listen	<b>ouvir, escutar</b>	most	<b>a maior</b>	only	
journey	<b>viagem</b> (f)	little	<b>pequeno, pouco</b>		<b>parte de</b>	(to) open	

opinion	<b>opinião</b> (f)	quickly	<b>depressa</b>
opportunity	<b>oportunidade</b> (f)	quiet	<b>calado</b>
opposite	<b>em frente de</b>		
or	<b>ou</b>	race	<b>corrida</b> (f) (competition);
(to) order	<b>encomendar</b>		<b>raça</b> (f) (people of same group)
other	<b>outro</b>		
(to) ought to	<b>dever</b>		<b>estrada</b> (f) <b>de</b>
our, ours	<b>nosso/a/os/as</b>	railway	<b>ferro</b> (Br); <b>caminho</b> (m) <b>de</b>
out	<b>fora</b>		<b>ferro</b> (Pt)
over there	<b>além, acolá</b>		<b>raro, mal passado</b> (cooked)
parcel	<b>pacote</b> (m), <b>embrulho</b> (m)	rare	<b>ler</b>
park	<b>parque</b> (m)	(to) read	<b>pronto</b>
partner	<b>sócio</b> (m)	ready	<b>receber</b>
(to) pay	<b>pagar</b>	(to) receive	<b>recusar</b>
PC (personal computer)	<b>PC</b> (m)	(to) refuse	<b>cumprimentos</b>
pen	<b>caneta</b> (f)	regards	(mpl)
pencil	<b>lápis</b> (m)		<b>ficar</b>
people	<b>gente</b> (f), <b>pessoas</b>	(to) remember	<b>lemburar-se de</b>
	(fpl)	(to) repair	<b>consertar, conserto</b>
perhaps	<b>talvez</b>		(m)
(to) pick up	<b>apanhar</b>	(to) rest	<b>descansar</b>
pity	<b> pena</b> (f), <b>lástima</b> (f)	rest	<b>resto</b> (m) (remain- der); <b>descanso</b>
(to) place	<b>pôr, colocar</b>		(m)
(to) play	<b>jogar</b> (sport); <b>brincar</b> (joke); <b>tocar</b> (music)	(to) return right	<b>voltar, regressar</b>
please!	<b>por/faz favor!</b>		<b>direito</b> (direction); <b>certo</b> (correct)
(to) please	<b>agradar</b>	(to) ring	<b>tocar</b>
(to) prefer	<b>preferir</b>	room	<b>quarto</b> (m)
printer	<b>Impressora</b> (f)	(to) run	<b>correr</b>
puncture	<b>furo</b> (m)		
purchase	<b>compra</b> (f)	safe	<b>fora de perigo,</b> <b>seguro; cofre</b> (m)
(to) put	<b>pôr, meter</b>		(for money)
quaint	<b>curioso, pitoresco</b>	salary	<b>salário</b> (m),
quality	<b>qualidade</b> (f)		<b>ordenado</b> (m)
quantity	<b>quantidade</b> (f)	salesman	<b>vendedor</b> (m)
question	<b>pergunta</b> (f), <b>questão</b> (f)	salt	<b>sal</b> (m)
		same	<b>mesmo</b>

sample	<b>amostra</b> (f)	street	<b>rua</b> (f)
(to) say	<b>dizer</b>	strike	<b>greve</b> (f)
scanner	<b>Scanner</b> (m)	strong	<b>forte</b>
(on) schedule	<b>à tabela,</b> <b>a tempo, no</b>	suit	<b>terno</b> (m) (Br); <b>fato</b> (m) (Pt)
	<b>horário</b>	suitcase	<b>mala</b> (f)
sea	<b>mar</b> (m)	sun	<b>sol</b> (m)
(to) see	<b>ver</b>	sunglasses	<b>óculos</b> (mpl)
(to) seem			<b>de sol</b>
(to) send	<b>parecer</b>	sunshine	<b>sol</b> (m)
several	<b>mandar, enviar</b>	(to) supply	<b>fornecer</b>
shop	<b>vários</b>	(to be) sure	<b>ter a certeza</b>
short	<b>loja</b> (f)	(to) switch off	<b>desligar</b>
(to) shut	<b>curto</b>	(to) switch on	<b>ligar</b>
sir	<b>fechar, encerrar</b>		
(to) sit down	<b>senhor</b>	table	<b>mesa</b> (f)
site (on	<b>sentar-se</b>	(to) take	<b>tomar, pegar</b> (em)
Internet)	<b>Site</b> (m)	(to) take off	<b>decolar</b> (plane), <b>despir-se</b>
size	<b>tamanho</b> (m)		(clothes)
(to) sleep	<b>dormir</b>	tall	<b>alto</b>
slow	<b>lento, devagar</b>	tea	<b>chá</b> (m)
small	<b>pequeno</b>	telephone call	<b>telefonema</b> (m), <b>chamada</b> (f)
(to) smoke	<b>fumar</b>		<b>dizer, contar</b>
so	<b>assim, portanto</b>		<b>temperatura</b> (f)
some	<b>algum/a</b>	(to) tell	<b>que, do que</b>
something	<b>alguma coisa</b>	temperature	<b>agradecer</b>
sometimes	<b>às vezes</b>	than	<b>obrigado</b>
soon	<b>em breve</b>	(to) thank	<b>o/a</b>
as soon as	<b>logo que, assim</b>	thank you	<b>então</b>
	<b>que</b>	the	<b>ali, lá, aí</b>
(to be) sorry	<b>ter pena</b>	then	<b>há</b>
sorry!	<b>desculpe!</b>	there	<b>magro</b>
south	<b>sul</b> (m)	there is/are	<b>coisa</b> (f)
(to) speak	<b>falar</b>	thin	<b>pensar, achar</b>
speaker	<b>locutor</b> (a)	thing	<b>sedé</b> (f)
(to) spend	<b> gastar</b>	(to) think	<b>este/a/es/as,</b> <b>esse/a/es/as,</b> <b>aquele/a/es/as</b>
sport	<b>esporte</b> (m) (Br); <b>desporto</b> (m) (Pt)	thirst	<b>atirar</b>
stamp	<b>selo</b> (m)	this/these/	<b>trovão</b> (m)
station	<b>estação</b> (f)	those	
(to) stay	<b>ficar</b>	(to) throw	
still	<b>ainda</b>	thunder	

thus	<b>assim</b>	us	<b>nos</b>
ticket	<b>bilhete</b> (m)	useful	<b>útil</b>
time	<b>tempo</b> (m), <b>hora</b> (f)	vacancy	<b>vaga</b> (f), <b>quarto</b> <b>livre</b> (m) (room)
this time	<b>esta vez</b>	value	<b>valor</b> (m)
timetable	<b>horário</b> (m)	variety	<b>variedade</b> (f)
tired	<b>cansado</b>	very	<b>muito</b>
to	<b>a, para</b>	virtual flowers	<b>Flores virtuais</b> (f)
to access the Net	<b>Entrar na Net</b>	visit	<b>visita</b> (f)
tobacconist	<b>tabacaria</b> (f)	wage	<b>salário</b> (m), <b>ordenado</b> (m)
today	<b>hoje</b>	(to) wait	<b>esperar</b>
toilet	<b>toalete</b> (m)	waiter	<b>garçom</b> (m), <b>empregado</b> (m)
too	<b>também</b>		
too much	<b>demasiado,</b> <b>demais</b>		
to scan	<b>Escanear</b>	(to) walk	<b>andar</b> (a pé), <b>caminhar</b>
to surf the Net	<b>Navegar na Net</b>		
(to) touch	<b>tocar</b>	(to) wake	<b>despertar, acordar</b>
to upload	<b>upload</b>	(to) want	<b>querer, desejar</b>
town	<b>cidade</b> (f)	(to) wash	<b>lavar(-se)</b>
traffic	<b>trânsito</b> (m)	we	<b>nós</b>
traffic jam	<b>engarrafamento</b> (m)	weather	<b>tempo</b> (m)
train	<b>trem</b> (m) (Br); <b>comboio</b> (m)	Web (on Internet)	Web (on Internet)
(Pt)		Web page	<b>Página da Web</b>
(to) travel	<b>viajar</b>	(f)	
(to) trip	<b>tropeçar, viagem</b> (f), <b>giro</b> (m)	well	<b>bem</b>
true	<b>verdadeiro</b>	west	<b>oeste</b> (m)
(to) try	<b>tentar, provar</b>	what?	<b>(o) quê?</b>
(to) turn	<b>virar, voltar</b>	when	<b>quando</b>
ugly	<b>feio</b>	where	<b>onde</b>
unable	<b>incapaz</b>	which	<b>qual</b>
underneath	<b>debaixo de, sob</b>	who	<b>quem</b>
(to) understand	<b>compreender</b>	whole	<b>todo, inteiro</b>
unfortunately	<b>infelizmente</b>	whose	<b>de quem</b>
unless	<b>a não ser que</b>	why?	<b>por que?</b>
until	<b>até</b>	wife	<b>mulher</b> (f), <b>esposa</b>
upstairs	<b>lá em cima</b>	(to) win	(f)
		wine	<b>ganhar</b>
		with	<b>vinho</b> (m)
			<b>com</b>

without	<b>sem</b>	you	<b>tu, você,</b>
woman	<b>mulher</b> (f)		<b>o/a senhor/a(s);</b>
(to) work	<b>trabalhar, trabalho</b> (m)		<b>vós, vocês, os/as</b>
worried	<b>preocupado</b>	your(s)	<b>senhores/as</b> (pl)
worse	<b>pior</b>	yourself	<b>teu/tua seu/sua</b>
worth	<b>valor</b> (m)		<b>tu mesmo,</b>
(to) write	<b>escrever</b>	young	<b>você mesmo</b>
x-ray	<b>raio-x</b> (m), <b>radiografia</b> (f)	youth	<b>juvenidade</b> (f)
		youth hostel	<b>pousada/albergaria</b>
			<b>(f) da juventude</b>
year	<b>ano</b> (m)	zero	<b>zero</b> (m)
yes	<b>sim</b>	zip	<b>fecho-ecler</b> (m)
yesterday	<b>ontem</b>		<b>(Br); fecho-éclair</b>
yet	<b>ainda, porém</b>		<b>(m) (Pt)</b>

**zero** (m)  
**fecho-ecler** (m)  
**(Br); fecho-éclair**  
**(m) (Pt)**

# Topic index

The numbers refer to the lessons in the book.

- accommodation 4, 10
- addresses 12
- advertisements 2, 10
- age 3, 11
- ailments 7
- airport 6
- appearance 2, 11
- appointments 12
- asking for something 1, 3–9, 12
- bank 8
- beverages 1, 3
- bill 1, 3, 5
- birthday 3
- body 7
- booking 4
- breakdown 4, 6, 10
- business terms 12
- bus station 6
- café 1
- camping 9
- car (problems) 6
- cash 3, 8
- cash-point card 8
- changing money 8
- chemist 7
- cheque 5, 8
- clothes 5
- colours 5
- comparisons 5
- computers 12
- conversation fillers 10, 11
- correspondence 12
- crossword 8
- currency 3, 8
- curriculum vitae 2
- customs 6
- daily routine 7
- date of birth 3
- dates 3
- days 2
- dentist 7
- describing yourself 2, 11
- directions 4
- dislikes/likes 1, 2, 5, 9, 11
- drinks 1, 3, 11
- driving 6
- eating out 1, 3
- electrical equipment 10, 12
- emergencies 7, 10
- employment 2, 11
- e-mail 13
- entertainment 9, 11
- excusing yourself 4
- expressing yourself 2, 9
- family 3
- farewells 1, 2
- fax 12

- food 1, 3
- furniture 10
- future plans 4, 9, 11
- garage 6
- getting attention 1, 4
- greetings 1, 9
- health 7
- hiring car 6
- hobbies 2, 7, 9, 11
- holidays 9, 11
- hospital 7
- hotel 4
- illness 7
- Internet 13
- interrupting 4
- introductions 1, 2, 11
- invitations 11
- jobs 2, 11
- leisure activities 2, 7, 11
- letters 12
- likes/dislikes 1, 2, 5, 9, 11
- materials 5
- meals 3
- measurements 5
- meetings (business, other) 1, 3, 11, 12
- memo 12
- menu 1, 3
- mobile phone (use) 13
- money 8
- months 3, 9
- nationalities 1, 3, 11
- newspapers 2, 10
- numbers 2, 3, 7
- office equipment 12
- opinions 2, 9, 10, 11
- ordering 1, 3
- past experiences 11
- pastimes 2, 7, 9, 11
- paying 3, 4, 5
- personality 2, 11
- physical appearance 2, 11
- post office 8
- postcard 12
- problems in the home 10
- proverbs 8
- quantities 5, 6
- reading (hints) 11
- relationships 3, 4
- reservations (rooms, seats) 4
- restaurant 3
- revision 13
- salutations 12
- seasons 9
- shops 5
- signs 5, 6
- sizes 5
- small talk 10, 11
- speed limits 6
- sports 7
- sweepstakes 10
- telephoning 8, 12
- television 2
- tickets (bus, cinema, theatre) 6, 9
- time 2, 4
- timetable (bus) 6
- transport (air, bus, other) 6
- travel 4, 6, 9, 10
- traveller's cheques 8
- weather 9
- weights 5

# Grammatical index

The numbers refer to the lessons in the book.

**a** 1, 2, 4–6  
 adjectives 1, 2, 3, 8  
 adverbs 2, 7  
 age 3, 11  
 ago 3  
**áí** 5  
**algumé** 5  
**algum** 5  
**ali** 5  
 all 5  
 alphabet (*See chapter A* guide to pronunciation)

**andar** 11

any 5

**aqui** 5

**aquilo, isso** 5

-ar verbs 2, 6

articles 1, 2, 4

augmentatives 9

**bem** 5, 10

commands 4

comparatives 5

conditional perfect tense 7

conditional tense 5, 7

**conhecer** 4

contractions 1, 2, 4, 5

**costumar** 7

date 3  
 days of week 2  
**de** 1, 2, 4–6  
 demonstratives 5  
 diminutives 9  
**em** 2, 4, 5  
 -er verbs 2, 6  
**estar, ser** 1, 2, 9  
 everything 5

**fazer** 3, 9  
**ficar** 4, 8  
 for 3, 4, 6  
 future indicative tense 4, 6  
 future perfect tense 6  
 future tense (using **ir** + infinitive)  
 4, 6

gender 1, 2  
 gerund 8  
**gostar de** 2

**há** 3, 4

**haver** 3

imperative 4

imperfect indicative tense 7

in 2, 4, 5

indicative tense 1, 3

infinitive 2, 11  
 -ing 8, 11  
 interrogatives 1, 3  
**ir** + infinitive 4, 6  
 -ir verbs 2, 3, 6  
 irregular verbs 1, 3 (*see also* verb tables)  
**isso, aquilo** 5

**lá** 5  
 leave: to leave 10  
 little 2

many 2  
**me, mim** 1, 3, 7  
 miss: to miss 6  
**morar** versus **viver** 10  
**muito** 2  
 myself 7

**nada** 5, 6, 9  
 negatives 1, 2, 5  
**nenhum** 5  
**ninguém** 5  
 no one 5  
 none 5  
 nothing 5, 6, 9  
 nouns 1, 8  
 numbers (cardinal, ordinal) 2, 3, 7

**o** 1, 2, 4–6  
 object pronouns (direct, indirect) 7, 8  
 of/from 1, 2, 4–6  
 orthography-changing verbs 11

**para** 3, 4, 6  
 participle (present) *see* gerund  
 passive voice 9  
 past participle 6  
 perfect tense 8  
 personal infinitive 11  
 pluperfect indicative tense 8

plurals 1, 2, 8  
**poder** 5  
**por** 6  
 possessive adjectives/pronouns 3  
**pouco** 2, 5  
 prefixes 11  
 prepositions 4, 7  
 present continuous tense 8  
 present indicative tense 1–3  
 present subjunctive tense 7  
 preterite tense 3  
 pronouns 1, 3, 5–8  
 pronunciation 1 (*see chapter A* guide to pronunciation)

**que, qual** 3, 5  
 questions 1–3, 5, 7

radical-changing verbs *see chapter Reference grammar*  
 reflexive pronouns 7  
 reflexive verbs 7  
 regular verbs 1, 3  
 relatives 3

**saber** 4  
**ser** 1, 2, 9  
 some 5  
 someone 5  
 subject pronouns 1, 7  
 subjunctive: present 9; past 10;  
 future 11, pluperfect 10;  
 perfect 9  
 subordinate clauses 9  
 suffixes 11  
 superlatives 5

**ter** 3, 4  
 time 2  
 to (**a, para**) 3, 4, 6  
 to be: **ser** versus **estar** 2  
**todo, tudo** 5

**um, uma** 1, 5

weather 9

word order 2, 3, 7

**ver** 5

verb tables (*see chapter Reference*

grammar)

**viver** versus **morar** 10

yes (reiterating the verb) 1

you 1, 4



# COLLOQUIAL PORTUGUESE OF BRAZIL

The second edition of the popular **COLLOQUIAL PORTUGUESE OF BRAZIL** is easy to use and completely up to date!

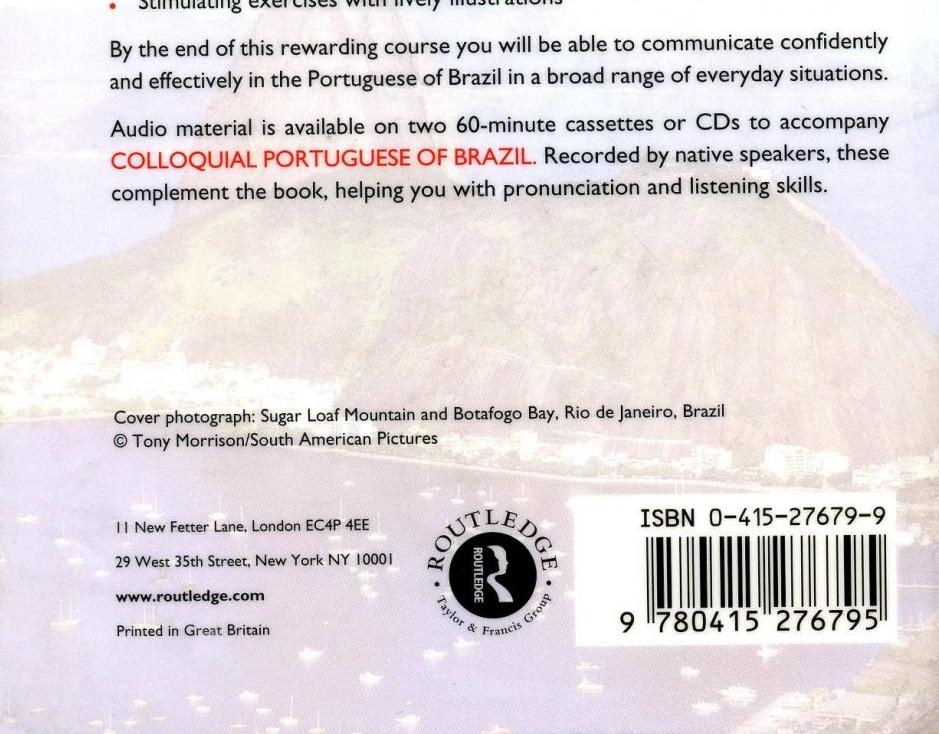
Specially written by experienced teachers for self-study and class use, the course offers you a step-by-step approach to written and spoken Portuguese of Brazil. No prior knowledge of the language is required.

What makes **COLLOQUIAL PORTUGUESE OF BRAZIL** your best choice in personal language learning?

- Emphasis on conversational language with clear pronunciation guidance
- Grammar section for easy reference
- Comprehensive vocabulary lists (Portuguese–English and English–Portuguese)
- Stimulating exercises with lively illustrations

By the end of this rewarding course you will be able to communicate confidently and effectively in the Portuguese of Brazil in a broad range of everyday situations.

Audio material is available on two 60-minute cassettes or CDs to accompany **COLLOQUIAL PORTUGUESE OF BRAZIL**. Recorded by native speakers, these complement the book, helping you with pronunciation and listening skills.



Cover photograph: Sugar Loaf Mountain and Botafogo Bay, Rio de Janeiro, Brazil  
© Tony Morrison/South American Pictures

11 New Fetter Lane, London EC4P 4EE  
29 West 35th Street, New York NY 10001  
[www.routledge.com](http://www.routledge.com)  
Printed in Great Britain



ISBN 0-415-27679-9



9 780415 276795